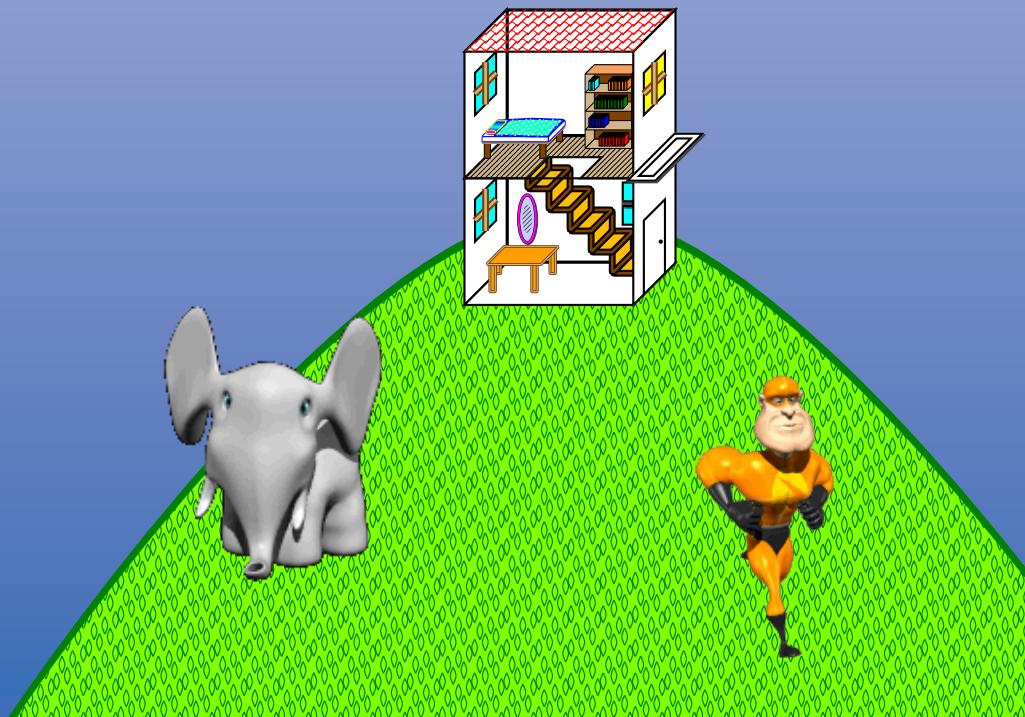


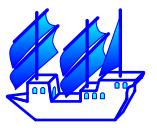


Learning English using Stories about Life

with simplified Chinese character support



Daniel J. Greenhoe



title: *Learning English using Stories about Life*
subtitle: *with simplified Chinese character support*
document type: book
author: Daniel J. Greenhoe
typesetting engine: X_ELaT_EX
document url: <https://www.researchgate.net/project/Language-Toolbox>
TECkit maps: <https://github.com/dgreenhoe/teckitmaps>
<https://github.com/dgreenhoe/unihan>

Copyright © 2017 Daniel J. Greenhoe
All rights reserved

**“Here, on the level sand,
Between the sea and land,
What shall I build or write
Against the fall of night? ”**



**“Tell me of runes to grave
That hold the bursting wave,
Or bastions to design
For longer date than mine. ”**

Alfred Edward Housman, English poet (1859–1936) ¹



“The uninitiated imagine that one must await inspiration in order to create. That is a mistake. I am far from saying that there is no such thing as inspiration; quite the opposite. It is found as a driving force in every kind of human activity, and is in no wise peculiar to artists. But that force is brought into action by an effort, and that effort is work. Just as appetite comes by eating so work brings inspiration, if inspiration is not discernible at the beginning. ”

Igor Fyodorovich Stravinsky (1882–1971), Russian-born composer ²



“As I think about acts of integrity and grace, I realise that there is nothing in my knowledge to compare with Frege's dedication to truth. His entire life's work was on the verge of completion, much of his work had been ignored to the benefit of men infinitely less capable, his second volume was about to be published, and upon finding that his fundamental assumption was in error, he responded with intellectual pleasure clearly submerging any feelings of personal disappointment. It was almost superhuman and a telling indication of that of which men are capable if their dedication is to creative work and knowledge instead of cruder efforts to dominate and be known.”

Bertrand Russell (1872–1970), British mathematician, in a 1962 November 23 letter to Dr. van Heijenoort. ³



-
- ¹ quote:  [Housman \(1936\): *More Poems*](#), page 64 (“Smooth Between Sea and Land”),
 [Hardy \(1940\): *A Mathematician's Apology*](#) (section 7)
- image: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Housman.jpg>
- ² quote:  [Ewen \(1961\): *The New Book of Modern Composers*](#), page 408,
 [Ewen \(1950\): *The Book of Modern Composers*](#)
- image: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Image:Igor_Stravinsky.jpg
- ³ quote:  [Heijenoort \(1967\): *From Frege to Gödel : A Source Book*](#), page 127
- image: <http://www-history.mcs.st-andrews.ac.uk/PictDisplay/Russell.html>

CONTENTS

Front matter		i
Front cover	i
Title page	iii
Typesetting Information	iv
Quotes	v
Contents	vii
1 Lessons		1
1: I will Carry You	3
2: I want to be a lawyer	9
3: Natural Disasters	15
4: Teach a Man to Fish	23
5: The Race	29
6: Outdoor Activities	37
7: I am a Fish	43
8: Living life	49
9: I work on a wildlife preserve	57
10: Con Artist	65
11: Forgiveness	71
12: I Want to be a Superhero	77
13: If You Love Someone	85
14: Let's Make a Movie	91
15: Ships at Sea	97
16: Help Me	103
17: Hygiene	107
18: Helping the Helpless	111
19: I am a Soldier	115
20: On an Airplane	121
21: Languages	127
A Extra		133
A.1 The Outhouse	133
A.2 The Seven Bridges of Königsberg	134
A.3 Six Glasses	134
A.4 River Cross	135
A.5 River Cross 2	136
A.6 Peter Piper	137
A.7 The Race on Horseback	138
A.8 Running from the Bear	138
A.9 Listen and Draw	139
B Language		147
C Font Information		153
C.1 Typesetting engine	153

C.2 Latin fonts	154
C.3 IPA typesetting	154
C.4 PinYin typesetting	154
C.5 Traditional Chinese typesetting	155
C.6 Ruby characters	155
C.7 Simplified Chinese typesetting	156
C.8 Generating the zht2zhs TECKit map file	157
C.9 Default bullet	157
Back Matter	159
Vocabulary by Lesson with PinYin	161
References	166
English Word Index	173
End of document	176

CHAPTER 1

LESSONS


LESSON 1: I will Carry You
I. PROVERB

“All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.”¹

II. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. brain	(n)	bren	头脑	10. run	(v)	rən	跑
2. damage	(v)	'dæmɪdʒ	损坏	11. swim	(v)	swɪm	游泳
3. institution	(n)	ɪnstɪ'tjuʃən	机构	12. ride	(v)	raɪd	骑
4. intelligent	(adj)	ɪn'telɪdʒənt	有智能的	13. race	(n/v)	res	赛跑
5. vegetable	(n)	'vedʒtəbəl	植物人	14. win	(v)	wɪn	赢得
6. wheelchair	(n)	'hwi'l'chjer	轮椅	15. lose	(v)	luz	输
7. handicapped	(adj)	'hændɪkæpt	残障的	16. kilometer	(n)	kɪ'lōm, mɪtə	公里
8. train	(v)	tren	训练	17. mile	(n)	'maɪl	英里
9. compete	(v)	kəm'pit	比赛	18. marathon	(n)	'mærəθən	马拉松
19. duathlon	(n)	dju'æθəlan	三项铁人				
20. triathlon	(n)	trai'æθəlan	三项运动				
21. ironman	(n)	'aɪən mæn	铁人比赛				
22. ultramarathon	(n)	'ʌltrə'mærəθən	超级马拉松				

III. SENTENCES

- She can run a _____ in less than 2 hours 43 minutes.
- He _____ everyday starting at 4 A.M.
- To compete in a _____, you must be able to swim, ride a bicycle, and run.
- In a _____, you _____, you cycle, and then you _____ again.
- There are approximately 1.62 _____ in one _____.
- I'm not crazy! Don't put me in an _____!
- His brain was _____ at birth and he became a _____.
- She is not only beautiful, but also very _____.
- She is _____ and cannot walk.
- He broke his leg and will be using a _____ for a few weeks.

¹ quote:  Howell (1659): *Proverbs in English, Italian, French and Spanish*

image:  (1996–*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (5089608)

IV. READING**Team Hoyt**

In 1962, Dick Hoyt's wife Judy gave birth to a boy they named Rick. But Rick's **brain was damaged** during birth and has never been able to walk or talk. Doctors told Rick's mom and dad, "Forget Rick, put him away, put him in an **institution**. He's gonna be nothing but a **vegetable** for the rest of his life."² But Dick said, "No, we're not going to put Rick away. We're going to bring Rick home and bring him up like any other child."³

And that's just what they did. They brought him home. They played with him, took him on picnics, took him mountain climbing, and took him to the beach to play in the water.⁴

As Rick got older, he still could not talk. But Rick's Mom noticed that Rick was *not* a **vegetable**, but rather was "alive inside".⁵ Some engineers were able to build a machine that allowed Rick to talk. The Hoyt family called this machine, "*The Hope Machine*".



One day Rick heard of a **5 mile** race. He told his dad, "Dad, I want to do that." At that time, Dick never **ran** more than a mile at a time. But he put Rick in a **wheelchair**, and together they ran their first **race** in 1977 when Rick was 15 years old and Dick was 36. That first race was very difficult for Dick. He said, "It almost killed me, that first race."⁶ And maybe it almost did kill him—Dick said, "My body hurt all over.... and I had blood in my urine for three days after the race."⁷ But that night Rick told his dad, "Dad, when I am running, it feels like I'm not even **handicapped**."⁸ And Dick's conclusion was simply, "Making Rick happy was the greatest feeling in the world."⁸

² Hayes (2007): *Sixty Minutes*

³ Morales (2006): *Today's Real Heroes*

⁴ Hayes (2007): *Sixty Minutes*

Nall (2002): *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron* page 51

⁵ Brant (2006): *Runner's World 41 [2006]*, page 94

⁶ Held (2007b): *Milwaukee Journal Sentinel*

⁷ Nall (2002): *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron*, pages 84–85

⁸ Brant (2006): *Runner's World 41 [2006]*, page 92

And so Dick began **training** hard. He said, “*You run for fun. But you race to win.*⁹ When Rick was in school, Dick would put a bag of cement in a **wheelchair** and go running with it. He became faster and faster and stronger and stronger. Dick and Rick began racing in a lot in 1980. They would sometimes run three races in a weekend and sometimes two races in the same day. In 1981, Dick and Rick ran for the first time in the Boston **Marathon**, completing it in less than 3 hours 12 minutes.



10

Some time later, someone invited Dick to **compete** in a **triathlon**. Dick said, “*Only if I can do it with my son.*” Dick had not ridden a bicycle since he was 7 years old,...and he didn't even know how to **swim**. The first time he tried he said, “*I just sank....I could not breathe*”. But 7 months later in 1985, Dick was swimming strong, pulling Rick behind him in a small boat in their first **triathalon**.¹¹



In 1986, they competed in their first **ironman**—“*Ironman Canada*”—a race which they completed after midnight in a time of 17 hours 53 minutes.¹²



⁹ Nall (2002): *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron* (pages 85,89,98)

¹⁰ image (swimming): <http://www.teamhoyt.com/2007/slides/5.jpg>

image (cycling): <http://stopunderachieving.com/graphics/hoyt.jpg>

image (running): http://www.mooseintl.org/public/moosemagazine/mayjunJul07/imgs/feature_imgs/teamhoyt0_350.jpg

¹¹ Nall (2002): *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron*, pages 112,127,134

¹² reference: Nall (2002): *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron* page 163

image: <http://www.tourismpentiction.com/events/listing/30th-annual-ironman-canada-triathlon>

As of April 2014, Dick at 73 years old and Rick 52, Dick and Rick have competed in a total of 1108 events, including 72 **marathons**, 255 **triathlons**, 6 **ironman** distances, and 22 **duathlons**, with their fastest marathon time being 2 hours 40 minutes 47 seconds.¹³



2014 Boston Marathon



2009 Boston Marathon (?)



2013 Boston Marathon (?)



Dana Krashin (25736)

As for Dick, he says, “*I just want to be the very best father I can be.*”¹⁴ As for Rick, he says, “*The thing I'd most like is that my dad would sit in the chair and I would push him once.*”¹⁵

REFERENCES

1. web: <http://www.teamhoyt.com/>
2. book: Nall, Sam: *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron*. 2nd edition. St. Petersburg: Southern Heritage Press, January 31 2002 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0941072517>), ISBN 0941072517
3. article: Brant, John: Team Hoyt Starts Again. *Runner's World*, 41 May 2006, Nr. 5 (URL: http://www.runnersworld.com/events/boston06/Mag_hoyt.html), ISSN 0897-1706
4. interview: Morales, Natalie: *A Father's Love for his Son*. December 26 2006 (URL: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f1Rvs08m_KI)
5. interview: Hayes, Liz: Team Hoyt. Sixty Minutes, May 27 2007 (URL: <http://sixtyminutes.ninemsn.com.au/article.aspx?id=269257>)
6. newspaper: Held, Tom: Father, son together for the long run. *Milwaukee Journal Sentinel*, February 19 2007a (URL: <http://www.jsonline.com/story/index.aspx?id=567488>)
7. newspaper: Area Beta Sigma Phi Chapters To Aid Hope Machine Research. *Nashua Telegraph*, January 23 1974 (URL: http://news.google.com/newspapers?nid=2209&dat=19740123&id=B58rAAAAIBAJ&sj=T_wFAAAAIBAJ&pg=6099,2958347)
8. newspaper: Matson, Barbara: Dick and Rick Hoyt run 32nd and last Marathon. *The Boston Globe*, April 22 2014 (URL: <https://www.bostonglobe.com/sports/2014/04/22/dick-and-rick-hoyt-run-marathon-their-last-duo/0802xd1CGKe5Z84VmCgMpI/story.html>)
9. newspaper: McDonald, Danny: We spoke to Dick Hoyt about why he stopped running the Boston Marathon. *Metro*, April 20 2015 (URL: <http://www.metro.us/boston/we-spoke-to-dick-hoyt-about-why-he-stopped-running-the-boston-marathon/zsJods---jaWXlC6eyCpbk/>)

V. VIDEO



You can watch a “*Today's Real Heroes*” video about Dick and Rick Hoyt at

http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f1Rvs08m_KI

VI. DISCUSSION

1. In the beginning, some people thought Dick was just using Rick to become famous.¹⁶ What do you think? Why did Dick do this?
2. In the beginning, Rick's mom Judy said, “*I hated Dick, and I hated all the mothers in the hospital and my friends who were mothers of babies that were not handicapped.*”¹⁷ Why do you think she felt this way? How would you feel?
3. Judy has said that racing is too dangerous for Rick and wanted them to stop. What do you

¹³ <http://www.teamhoyt.com/about/racing-history.html>

¹⁴ Morales (2006): *Today's Real Heroes* (5:36)

¹⁵ Reilly (2005): *Sports Illustrated*

¹⁶ Brant (2006): *Runner's World* 41 [2006], page 95

¹⁷ Nall (2002): *It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron* page 38

Brant (2006): *Runner's World* 41 [2006] page 94

think?

4. Schools did not want Rick. But his mom fought to have him in school, and she eventually won. What would you do if you were the school principal?
5. Dick and Rick spent large amounts of time competing and training. Judy didn't like it. And in 1994 after 34 years of marriage, Dick and Judy divorced.¹⁸ What do you think happened?

VII. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____ . I like _____ .
DRAMA:	You have a friend that has some problem (can't walk, can't sing, not strong, is very afraid of something, ...). How do you help him or her have fun doing that thing (play basketball, be in singing competition, be a boxer,...)?

VIII. SONG

song title: *Carry You Home* (2007) | album: *All The Lost Souls*
 singer: James Blunt | lyrics: James Blunt and Max Martin

lyrics:	http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/jamesblunt/carryyouhome.html
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/dp/B001239DIY/
video:	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=2IFF9yu5i3k

Hints (提示): away, breathing, carry, day, friend, fly, heart, home, last, much, older, quiet, some, song, strong, tender, time, town, trouble, wings

1.	is her only	and he's back again.
2.	Makes her body	than it really is.
3.	She says it's high	she went ,
4.	No one's got	to say in this .
5.	is the only way is	, , .
6.	As	as you were, you go.
7.	I'm watching you	for the time.
8.	A	for your ,
9.	but when it is	, ,
10.	I know what it means and I'll	you .
11.	I'll	you .
12.	If she had	she would away,
13.	And another	God will give her .
14.	is the only way is	, , .

¹⁸  Brant (2006): *Runner's World* 41 [2006], page 96

 **LESSON 2: I want to be a lawyer**
I. PROVERB

“A friend in need is a friend indeed.”¹

A friend who needs _____ is a friend indeed.
needs what?

II. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. lawyer	(n)	'lɔ:jər	律师	11. murder	(v)	'mɜ:dər	谋杀
2. attorney	(n)	ə't ə:rni	律师	12. fingerprint	(n)	'fɪngə,rprint	指纹
3. law school	(n)	lɔ skul	法学院	13. admit	(v)	æd'mit	承认
4. degree	(n)	dri'gri	学位	14. sentence	(v)	'sɛntəns	宣判
5. arrest	(v)	ə'rest	逮捕	15. stand by	(v)	stænd baɪ	支持
6. convict	(v)	kən'veikt	证明有罪	16. promise	(v)	'pramɪs	答应
7. court	(n)	kort	法庭	17. desert	(v)	dri'z ə:t	遗弃
8. innocent	(adj)	'ɪnəsnt	无罪的	18. drop out	(v)	drap aut	退学
9. guilty	(adj)	'gilti	有罪的	19. committed	(adj)	ke'mitid	忠诚的
10. exonerate	(v)	ɪg'zane'ret	使免受指控	20. dedicate	(v)	'dədə'ket	献身

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
21. lie detector test	(n)	laɪ dɪ'tekter tɛst	测谎
22. life in prison	(n)	laɪf ɪn 'prɪzn	终身监禁
23. blood sample	(n)	blʌd 'sæmpl	血液样本

III. SENTENCES

- Police found many _____ at the **murder** scene.
- The police came and _____ her.
- She _____ him that she would help.
- She had _____ of high school.
- She went to _____ and became a _____.
- They wanted the _____ for DNA testing.
- She was deeply _____ to her brother.
- I'll _____ by you.
- I'll never _____ you.
- After 18 years in prison, he was finally _____.
- She _____ her life to helping her brother.

¹  (1996–*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4953120)

IV. READING



at home, 1964



on vacation in Maine, 1962



Betty Anne's wedding, 1980

Betty Anne Waters came from a large family—she had eight brothers and sisters. She was especially close to her brother Kenny, who was only one year older than her. Betty said, “*Kenny and I were very close growing up.... We were best friends growing up. As a child,...we were kind of wild. But we had fun; we had a lot of fun.*”²



Kenny



Kenny



Kenny, Marine Corps

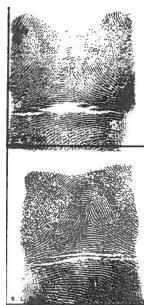


Betty Anne

In 1980, when Kenny was 26 years old, Kenny's neighbor was **murdered**. Police came and questioned Kenny. But on the night of the murder, Kenny had been working all night until 8:30am ...and there were time cards to prove it. Police checked Kenny's clothes; there was no blood on them. Hair was found in the victim's hand, but the FBI found that this hair was not Kenny's hair.³ **Fingerprints** were found. They checked Kenny's **fingerprints** twice and decided that he was not the murderer. Four months later they even gave Kenny a **lie detector test**; he passed.



time card



Kenny's fingerprints



Kenny and officer Nancy Taylor



arrest photo

But two and a half years later in 1982, police still came and **arrested** Kenny. They said he was the **murderer**. Kenny was **put on trial in court**. In **court**, police lied saying that there were no time cards. Police lied saying there were no useable **fingerprints**. Two ex-girlfriends of Kenny lied saying that Kenny had **admitted** to the murder. Kenny was **convicted** in 1983 and **sentenced to life in prison**.

In prison, Kenny tried to kill himself. He failed. But he told his sister, “Betty Anne, I cannot live in prison for something I didn't do. I'm not going to make it in here.” Betty asked him, “*If I promise you*

² Project (2010): *The True Story Behind "Conviction"*

³ Waters (1998):

*I'll go back to school, will you **promise** me you'll stay alive?⁴*

But how could she help him? This would not be easy. Betty wasn't young—she was already in her early 30's. Betty had little time—she had a husband and two young sons. Betty had very little money—she worked as a waitress. Betty had little education—she had **dropped out** of high school.

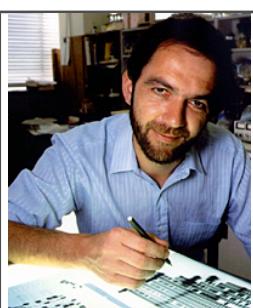


Community College of Rhode Island



Roger Williams University School of Law

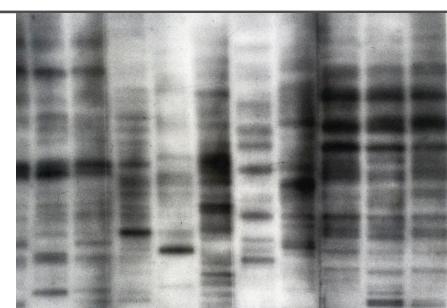
But none of this stopped Betty. She was determined to help Kenny. First, Betty finished her high school **degree**. Next, she went to college and earned three more **degrees**. After that, Betty went to **law school**, and earned a doctorate degree. Then, Betty passed the bar exam, and became a real **attorney**. All this took about 17 years. During that time her husband left her saying that she loved Kenny more than she loved him.



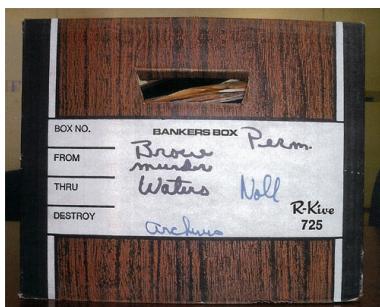
Alec Jeffreys invented **DNA testing** in 1984 at the University of Leicester in England



world's first DNA fingerprint, 1984 September 10, 9:05AM



In 1984, a man named Alec Jeffreys accidentally invented something new—**DNA fingerprinting**. One day Betty read about this. She had an idea. If she could somehow get the old **blood samples** from the murder scene, the samples could be DNA tested and prove Kenny was **innocent**. But the murder had taken place about 18 years ago; **blood samples** could be destroyed after 10 years.



missing evidence box



Betty and Kenny, March 2001



Kenny

Betty searched anyways. The samples were finally found in a box in a courthouse basement. They were tested. The DNA test showed that the blood was not Kenny's blood. In 2001, when he was 47 years old and after spending 18 years in prison, Kenny was **exonerated** and released from prison.

But Betty didn't stop there. She found the missing timecards. She found Kenny's fingerprint tests. She also made the ex-girlfriends **admit** that they had lied.

⁴ Project (2010): *The True Story Behind "Conviction"*

Kenny said, "I think it's absolutely amazing that she's **dedicated** her life to this."⁵ Today, Betty continues to work to help other people who have been wrongfully **convicted** and put in prison. She said, "I think I'm lucky, that I might be the person who gets to help someone else....This is just my life now."⁶

REFERENCES

1. newspaper: Montminy, Patricia W.: Waters once served time, judge told. Sun, 1982 (URL: <http://www.innocenceproject.org/docs/conviction/Newspaper.pdf>)
2. newspaper: Aitkenhead, Decca: Betty Anne Waters: 'We thought Kenny was coming home'. The Guardian, December 11 2010 (URL: <http://www.theguardian.com/film/2010/dec/11/betty-anne-waters-interview>)
3. newspaper: Stockman, Farah, Daniel, Mac and Staff, Globe: After 18 years in prison, 'It's great to be free'. Boston Globe, March 16 2001 (URL: <http://truthinjustice.org/ken-waters.htm>)
4. newspaper: Pogrebin, Robin: From Waitress to Brother's Savior, Then Hollywood Hero. New York Times, October 13 2010 (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/10/13/movies/13waitress.html>)
5. AP news: Lewis, Richard: Man who had been freed after 20 years in prison dies from fall. AP News, September 19 2001 (URL: <http://truthinjustice.org/waters-fall.htm>)
6. video: Project, Innocence: *The True Story Behind "Conviction"*. November 16 2010 (URL: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fCZ03_sW7VQ)
7. video: *Brother's overturned conviction now movie.* (URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SpQi5ozWprM>)
8. letter: Waters, Betty Anne: November 20 1998 (URL: http://www.innocenceproject.org/docs/conviction/Betty_Anne_Waters_ltr_to_IP.pdf)
9. web: http://www.innocenceproject.org/Content/Kenny_Waters.php

V. VIDEO

The movie "Conviction" is based on this story.

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NrPtr0aQx3s>



VI. DISCUSSION

1. Betty said she and Kenny were " _____ friends". Why do you think Betty and Kenny were so close?
2. What do you think of what Betty did for her brother? Would you spend 18 years of your life for one of your family members?
3. If you were sent to prison for life for something you didn't do, what would you do? Could you find a way to still be happy?
4. Do you think Betty's life is better because of her brother being put in prison, or that she would have been better off if it had not happened?
5. You are in prison for 18 years for something you didn't do. One day, they find out that you are innocent and you are set free. Reporters are waiting for you outside the prison. What would you say to them?
6. Six months after being released from prison, Kenny fell from a high wall and later died. Do you think that Betty's work was still worthwhile?

⁵ Project (2010): *The True Story Behind "Conviction"*

⁶ Project (2010): *The True Story Behind "Conviction"*

VII. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. _____ <small>(is/can)</small> _____ <small>("is"→adjective / "can"→verb)</small> _____ <small>What do you do or what happens?</small> _____ <small>What will your friend do?</small>	I would like a friend who For example, if I , then I hope my friend will
DRAMA:	Your friend goes to prison for stealing an eraser from a teacher. But you know that your friend would never do that. What would you do to help your friend?	

Here are some words that might help:⁷

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. brave	(adj)	brev	勇敢的	13. calm	(adj)	kam	镇静的
2. clever	(adj)	'klevə̄	聪明的	14. curious	(adj)	'kjvriə̄s	好奇的
3. dependable	(adj)	dɪ'pɛndəbə̄l	可靠的	15. diligent	(adj)	'dilədʒənt	勤劳的
4. forgiving	(adj)	fə̄-'givɪŋ	宽容的	16. friendly	(adj)	'frēndlɪ	友善的
5. generous	(adj)	'dʒenərə̄s	慷慨的	17. gentle	(adj)	'dʒentl̄	温和的
6. helpful	(adj)	'hɛlpfə̄l	有帮助的	18. honest	(adj)	'anɪst	诚实的
7. humorous	(adj)	'huumərə̄s	幽默的	19. kind	(adj)	kaɪnd	亲切的
8. loyal	(adj)	'lɔɪə̄l	忠诚的	20. polite	(adj)	pə̄'laɪt	有礼貌的
9. quiet	(adj)	'kwaɪə̄t	安静的	21. serious	(adj)	'sɪrɪə̄s	严肃的
10. shy	(adj)	ʃai	害羞的	22. studious	(adj)	'stjudiə̄s	好学的
11. thoughtful	(adj)	'θʊtful	体贴的	23. patient	(adj)	'peʃənt	有耐心的
12. intelligent	(adj)	ɪn'telədʒənt	有才智的	24. wise	(adj)	waɪz	有智慧的
ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文				
25. carefree	(adj)	'ker̄.fri	无忧无虑的				
26. hard-working	(adj)	hard'wɜːkɪŋ	努力工作的				

VIII. LATERAL THINKING PUZZLE

Order these and solve the riddle:



- | | |
|----|---|
| A. | They run over to the car.

<small>1/2.../6</small> |
| B. | The police drive by a car.

<small>1/2.../6</small> |
| C. | They tell the boy, "Well done!"

<small>1/2.../6</small> |
| D. | They give the boy a ride to his home.

<small>1/2.../6</small> |
| E. | They see a boy smashing the car's taillights with a long stick.

<small>1/2.../6</small> |
| F. | Why?

<small>1/2.../6</small> |



⁷ reference: http://www.montgomeryschoolsmd.org/schools/beverlyfarmes/tools/character_traits.htm

⁸ reference: Harshman, MacHale and Sloane (2004): *Classic Lateral Thinking Puzzles page 4* (Smashed Taillights) images: (1996-*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4955156,4952890)

IX. SONG

song title:	<i>I'll Stand by You</i> (1994)	album:	<i>Last of the Independents</i>
singer:	Pretenders	lyrics:	Chrissie Hynde, Tom Kelly and Billy Steinberg
lyrics:	http://www.pretenders.org/lyill.htm		
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/gp/product/B002M9QWIQ		
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UpQ60ESv24A		

Hints (提示): along, angry, ashamed, choose, come, confess, crossroads, cry, dark, hide, hurt, inside, know, less, like, mad, night, sad, stand, talk, tears, through, wrong

1. Oh, why you look so _____ ?
 2. _____ are in your eyes.
 3. _____ on and _____ to me now.
 4. Don't be ashamed to _____ .
 5. Let me see you _____ ,
 6. 'cause i've seen the _____ side too.
 7. When the _____ falls on you,
 8. you don't _____ what to do.
 9. Nothing you _____
 10. could make me love you _____ .
 11. I'll _____ by you. I'll _____ by you.
 12. Won't let nobody _____ you.
 13. I'll _____ by you.
 14. So if you're _____ , get _____ .
 15. Don't hold it all _____ .
 16. Come on and _____ to me now.
 17. Hey, what you got to _____ ?
 18. I get _____ too.
 19. Well I'm a lot _____ you.
 20. When you're standing at the _____ ,
 21. and don't know which path to _____ ,
 22. let me come _____
 23. 'cause even if you're _____
 24. I'll _____ by you.
- ...

X. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG

1. Oh, why you look so _____ ?
(an adjective)
2. _____ your
What? (a noun) is/are in/on eyes/ears/mouth/face/feet/hands/head/...
3. Come on and _____ to me now.
4. Don't be ashamed to _____ .
Do what? (a verb)
5. I get _____ too.
什么感情?
6. Well I'm a lot like _____ .
Who or what?

LESSON 3: Natural Disasters

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. thunderstorm	(n)	'θʌndər, storm	大雷雨	14. explode	(v)	ɪk'splod	爆炸
2. earthquake	(n)	'ɜːθkweɪk	地震	15. bury	(v)	'berɪ	埋藏
3. tsunami	(n)	tsu'nami	海啸	16. hide	(v)	haɪd	躲藏
4. volcano	(n)	val'keno	火山	17. erupt	(v)	ɪ'rʌpt	迸出
5. tornado	(n)	tɔːr'nedo	龙捲风	18. collapse	(v)	kə'læps	倒塌
6. typhoon	(n)	taɪ'fun	台风	19. vaporize	(v)	'vepə,raɪz	蒸发
7. hurricane	(n)	'hɜːrɪ,ken	飓风	20. shatter	(v)	'ʃætər	粉碎
8. flood	(n)	flʌd	洪水	21. spread out	(v)	spred aʊt	摊开
9. landslide	(n)	'lænd, slайд	山崩	22. suffocate	(v)	'sʌfə,ket	窒息
10. avalanche	(n)	'ævl, æntʃ	雪崩	23. gas	(n)	gæs	气
11. wild fire	(n)	'waɪld fair	野火	24. dust	(n)	dʌst	灰尘
12. burn	(v)	bɜːn	烧	25. charcoal	(n)	'tʃɑːr,kol	木炭
13. boil	(v)	bɔɪl	沸腾	26. predict	(v)	prɪ'dɪkt	预言

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
27. debris	(n)	də'bri	破瓦残砾
28. pyroclastic surge	(n)		火山碎屑潮

II. SENTENCES

- The trash caught on _____ and _____ up.
- The _____ quickly _____ 100 houses.
- The water is _____.
- The mountain was not just a mountain, it was a _____.
- The **volcano** _____ 1000 years ago.
- The **earthquake** caused some buildings to _____.
- The roofs **collapsed**, _____ people inside.
- The bottle of _____ became very hot and _____.
- You can run, but you cannot _____.
- The _____ filled the town with water.
- The hot gas cloud **collapsed** starting a _____.
- Can some animals _____ earthquakes?

III. READING

The Mountain who Hunted People

Two thousand years ago, Pompeii was a beautiful town in Italy. It was built next to a mountain called Mount Vasuvius. Crops (庄稼) grew well around Pompeii. For fun the people there watched gladiators (角斗士) fight. People in Pompeii were busy making money. But the Romans there did not need to work too hard...there were many slaves (奴隶) for that. One job the slaves did was wash clothes—with human urine (人尿). Slaves did all the work. The female (女) slaves even slept with their masters (主人).



map

Gladiators



Mount Vesuvius

Mount Vesuvius erupting

13 trying to flee Pompeii

The Romans had a god named *Vulcan*—the god of fire. Every year on August 23, there was a festival for *Vulcan*.² One year, in 79 A.D., on the very next day after this festival around **1 P.M.**, **smoke** began coming out of Mount Vesuvius, climbing 20 kilometers into the air, and then **spreading out**. Pompeii became very dark. The mountain was not just a mountain, it was a **volcano**. And this volcano was like a hunter—a hunter that was hunting people. It started by sending out small **earthquakes**, causing some buildings to **collapse**.

Around **5 P.M.**, the **cloud** had become larger and larger in the sky. Small rocks from the cloud began to fall on Pompeii—at 200 kilometers per hour. People hid in their houses. But the volcano hunted them down. Rocks from the volcano fell for hours onto the roofs of the houses, making the roofs **collapse**, and **burying** people inside.



2

By about **midnight**, the hot gas cloud was 30 kilometers high. Suddenly, it **collapsed** starting a **pyroclastic surge**. **Gas** that was 400 degrees celsius rushed into the town of Herculaneum. It found, **burned** up and killed those who were outside, even turning them into **charcoal**. Hundreds of others tried to hide in some caves called the “*boat houses*”. But the surge cloud went in after them. The cloud was so hot that their skin **vaporized**, their teeth **shattered**, their bones **shattered**, and

¹ map: (2013)*Pompeii Live from the British Museum*. painting: *Pollice Verso* (1872) by Jean-Léon Gérôme (1824–1904). https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Jean-Leon_Gerome_Pollice_Verso.jpg. public domain

² Smith and Anthon (1862): *A New Classical Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography...*, pages 351–352

Adkins and Adkins (1998): *Handbook to Life in Ancient Rome* page 273 (VULCAN)

³ left image: (2013)*Pompeii Live from the British Museum*

center: Wilkinson (2003a): *Pompeii: The Last Day*

right: *News and Views*

their brains **boiled** and **exploded**.

Around **6 A.M.** on August 25th, the cloud collapsed again sending out another **pyroclastic surge**, this time into Pompeii. This cloud was about 300 degrees celsius. Buildings **collapsed**. Everyone died. It was not an easy death. Breathing the gas the first time was like breathing fire—and soon their lungs filled with something like wet cement; and soon, they **suffocated** and died.

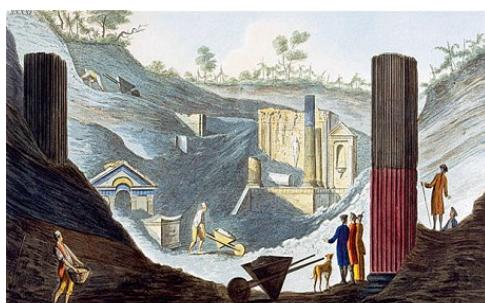


Some people had escaped to the other side of the water and into the countryside. But again the volcano was like a mighty hunter. At about **8 A.M.**, the volcano sent out its last **pyroclastic surge**. This surge went towards the water. But when it got there, it did not stop. It went right over the top of the water and into the countryside. It caught up with thousands who had run away there and killed them as well.

In just 18 hours, the volcano poured out 10 billion tons of **debris** and killed about 5000 people. It **buried** Pompeii 5 meters deep and Herculaneum 20 meters deep in **debris**. Pompeii and Herculaneum disappeared from sight. And over the years, people forgot about them.



excavation of Pompeii



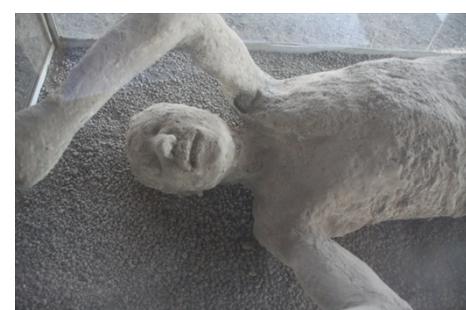
excavation of the Temple of Isis, Pompeii



Pompeii



family in Pompeii



But some 1700 years later, workers were digging a well when they accidentally again found Herculaneum. In 1927, people began carefully digging up Pompeii and Herculaneum. They found they could still see what people were doing when they died. It was as if the hunter volcano, after killing thousands of people, was proud of what it had done, and then took a picture to show us 2000 years later.

REFERENCES

1. book: Wilkinson, Paul: *Pompeii: The Last Day*. BBC Books, 2003b, Documentary television programs (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN0563487704>), ISBN 9780563487708
2. video: Canfor-Dumas, Edward and Nicholson, Peter: *Pompeii: The Last Day*. 2003 (URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sQzDcZE2hoE>)
3. book: Pliny: *Ashen Sky: The Letters of Pliny the Younger on the Eruption of Vesuvius*. Trans. by Benedicte Gilman. Getty Publications, 2007 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN0892369000>), ISBN 9780892369003
4. web: Pompeii Live from the British Museum. 2013 (URL: http://www.britishmuseum.org/whats_on/past_exhibitions/2013/pompeii_and_herculaneum/pompeii_live/eruption_timeline.aspx)
5. web: <http://blog.britishmuseum.org/category/exhibitions/life-and-death-in-pompeii-and-herculaneum/>

6. web: http://newsandviews24.com/read.php?id=p_56
 7. book: Jashemski, Wilhelmina Feemster and Meyer, Frederick G., editors: *The Natural History of Pompeii*. Cambridge University Press, September 19 2002, ISBN 9780521800549
 8. book: McGinn, Thomas A. J.: *The Economy of Prostitution in the Roman World: A Study of Social History & the Brothel*. University of Michigan Press, 2004 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0472113623>), ISBN 9780472113620

IV. VIDEOS

The BBC has produced an excellent documentary about Pompeii and Herculaneum called *Pompeii: The Last Day*:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ESWRBvsR0oU>



The movie “Pompeii” is movie loosely based on this story.

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=t6TRwfxDICM>

**V. DISCUSSION**

1. Why did this happen to Pompeii? Do you think they were being punished (处罚)?
2. If you saw the cloud of smoke going up out of the mountain, what would you have done?
3. Why did the people in Pompeii choose to live next to a volcano? Would you live there?
4. If you were in a boat in the sea when the volcano erupted, would you run away as fast as you could or would you go back to try to rescue people on the beach?
5. If you were a slave, would you try to save your master?

VI. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. I am afraid of _____.
DRAMA:	You find out that the moutain behind your school is really a volcano! AND, it is going to erupt next week. What do you do to save your school?

VII. JOKE

1. Three soldiers were captured (捕获). Each was to be shot (射中) that week.



In that part of the world, natural disasters were very common. So they thought of an idea for escape (逃走): They would shout out the name of a natural disaster, and then while the guards (警卫) were running to hide, one soldier would run away and escape.

2. On the first day, one soldier shouted, “TORNADO!” The guards ran to hide, and the soldier escaped.

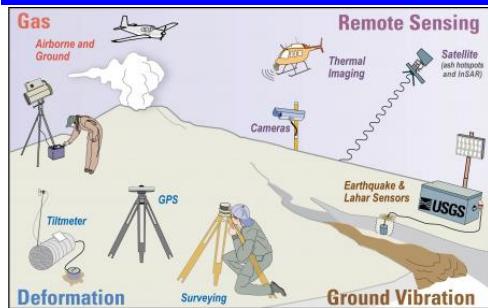


3. On the second day, the second soldier shouted, “VOLCANO!” The guards ran to hide, and the second soldier escaped.



On the third day, the third soldier shouted, “_____!” The guards immediately shot him.⁴

VIII. PREDICTING VOLCANIC ERUPTIONS



prediction equipment



Veniaminof Volcano, Alaska



near Mount Rainier peak

Want to know more? See <http://volcanoes.usgs.gov/vhp/monitoring.html>

IX. PREDICTING EARTHQUAKES

Can toads predict earthquakes?



In late March 2009, in a pond in Italy, there were about 80–90 male toads. In just a few days, almost all of them disappeared. Why they left was a great mystery. Then, on April 6, there was a magnitude 6.3 earthquake that killed hundreds of people and injured thousands more. Then a few days later, around April 15, the toads came back. Some people have thought that the toads somehow knew the earthquake was coming.

Want to know more? See

<http://news.discovery.com/earth/can-toads-predict-earthquakes.htm>

X. SONG

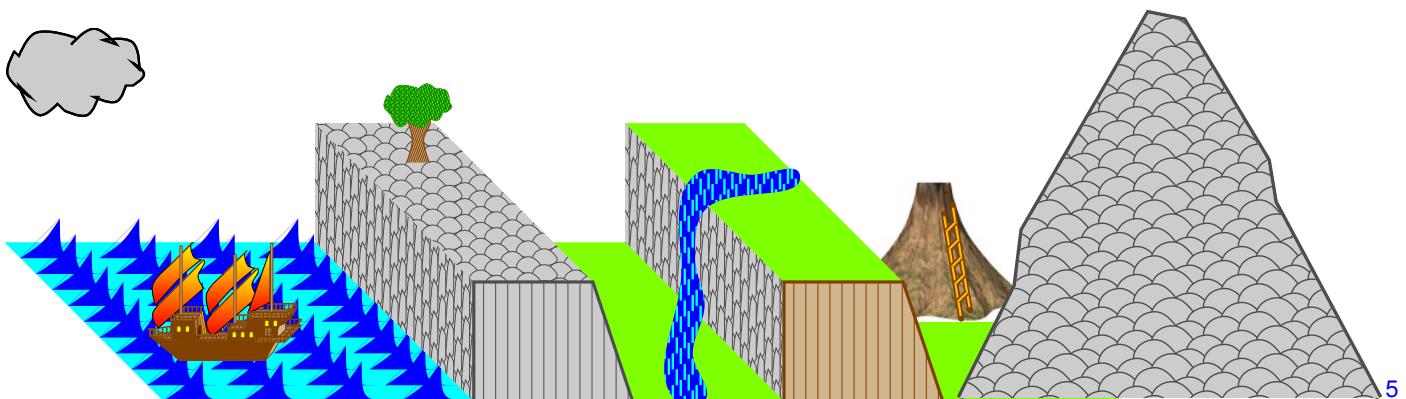
song title:	<i>Two Sparrows in a Hurricane</i> (1992)	album:	<i>Can't Run from Yourself</i>
singer:	Tanya Tucker	lyrics:	Mark Alan Springer

lyrics:	http://www.lyricsmode.com/lyrics/t/tanya_tucker/two_sparrows_in_a_hurricane.html
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/dp/B0013ROYAK/
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IUsyHVjacJ0

Hints (提示): anything, car, hurricane, feel, fifteen, find, fly, head, keys, love, ring, time, uphill

1. She's _____ and he's barely driving a _____
2. She's got his _____ and he's got the _____ to her heart
3. It's just matter of _____
4. They'll spread their wings and _____
5. Like two sparrows in a _____
6. Trying to _____ their way
7. With a _____ full of dreams
8. And faith that can move _____
9. They've heard it's all _____
10. But all they know is how they _____
11. The world says they'll never make it, _____ says they will

⁴ adapted from: <http://www.brainngle.com/brainteasers/28473/choose-your-disaster.html>
Images: (1996–*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

XI. LISTEN AND DRAW**XII. LET'S PLAY A GAME**

Stop Disasters! online game: <http://www.stopdisastersgame.org>

You have US\$50,000 to build and protect a small fishing village. You need to build defenses. But the people there also need places to live, a school for children, a hospital, and two hotels for tourists. You need to build enough housing for 300 people. What can you build to keep them safe but also help them to prosper?

defense	cost	restrictions
1. concrete barriers	\$1500	in water or land
2. trees	\$100	on land
3. coconut trees	\$50	close to water
4. mangrove trees	\$500	in shallow water
5. sand dunes	\$1500	on land

structure	cost	people
1. bamboo hut	\$150	4
2. wood house	\$250	6
3. brick house	\$300	8
4. concrete house	\$750	10
5. hotel	\$1500	30
6. school	\$1000	40
7. hospital	\$1200	40



⁵ source. Greenhoe; duck,volcano: (1996–*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

XIII. LATERAL THINKING PUZZLE

Order these sentences and fill in the blank...

- A. Finally, he was released.

1/2/.../7
- B. For a long time, no one came to see him.

1/2/.../7
- C. 4 For a long time, no one gave him food or water.

1/2/.../7
- D. He was there longer than he thought he would be.

1/2/.../7
- E. In 1902, Mr. Cyparis was in jail in the French West Indies for being drunk.

1/2/.../7
- F. But when he was released, he was very happy that he had been in jail.

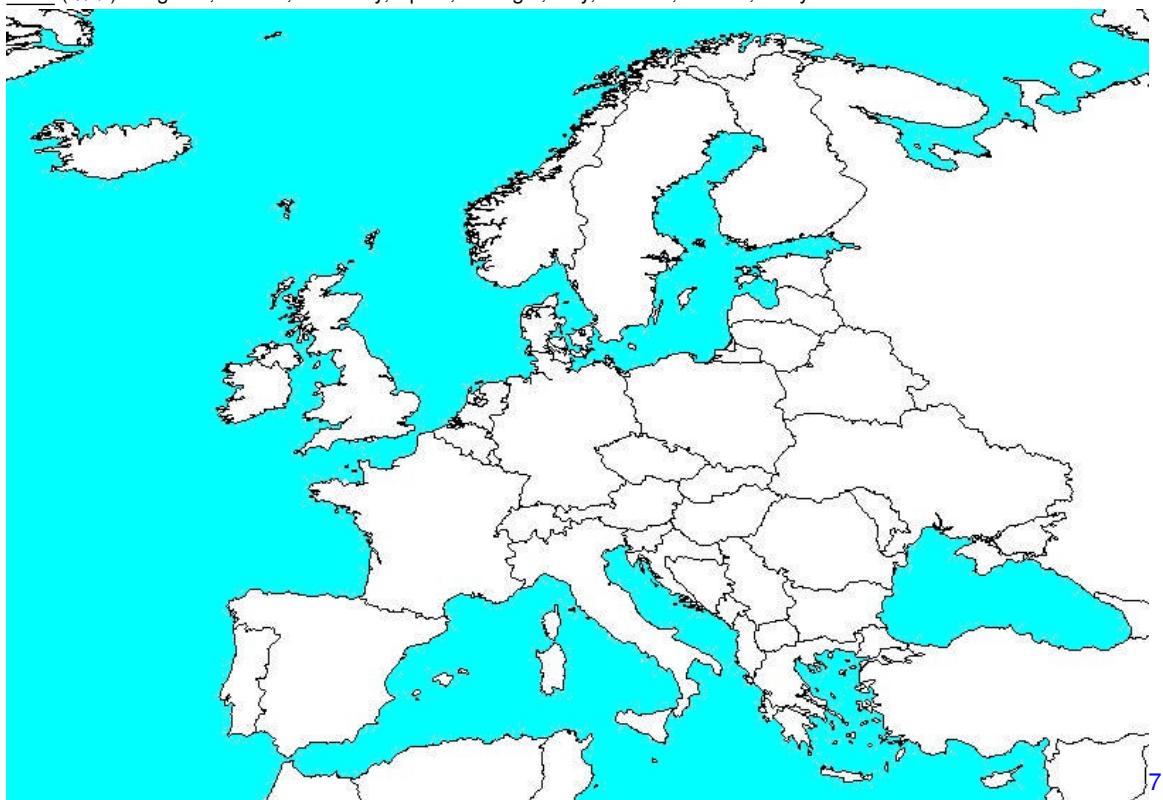
1/2/.../7
- G. 7 Why?

1/2/.../7

6

XIV. GEOGRAPHY

Hints (暗示): England, France, Germany, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Greece, Poland, Sicily



7

⁶ 📖 Sloane (1992): *Lateral Thinking Puzzlers* page 22 (3.2 The Grateful Prisoner)

⁷ <http://geography.about.com/library/blank/blxeurope.htm>

 **LESSON 4: Teach a Man to Fish**
I. PROVERB

“Give a man a fish, you feed him for a day. Teach a man to fish, you feed him for a lifetime.”¹

II. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. parent	(n)	'pərənt	父母	12. waste	(v)	west	浪费
2. teacher	(n)	'tɪtʃə	老师	13. rule	(n)	rule	规则
3. classmate	(n)	'klæs̩, met	同学	14. program	(n)	'prəgræm	节目
4. school	(n)	skul	学校	15. homework	(n)	'hom̩, wɜːk	功课
5. education	(n)	,edzʊ'keʃən	教育	16. library	(n)	'laɪ,brəri	图书馆
6. formal	(adj)	'fɔːml	正式的	17. mark	(v)	mark	批改
7. study	(v)	'stʌdɪ	学习	18. highlight	(n)	'haɪləɪt	亮点
8. learn	(v)	lɜːn	学习	19. check mark	(n)	'tʃekmɑːk	勾
9. drop out	(v)	drap aʊt	退学	20. recognize	(v)	'rekəg̩, naɪz	认出
10. knowledge	(n)	'nɒlɪdʒ	知识	21. graduate	(v)	'grædʒʊ, et	毕业
11. wisdom	(n)	'wɪzdəm	智慧	22. honors	(n)	'ənəz	荣誉

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
23. parenting	(n)	'pərəntɪŋ	父母的养育
24. book report	(n)	bʊk rɪ'port	读书报告
25. kindergarten	(n)	'kɪnər̩, gartn̩	幼稚园
26. primary school	(n)	'praɪ, mərɪ skul	小学
27. junior high school	(n)	'dʒuːnjər̩ haɪ skul	初级中学
28. high school	(n)	haɪ skul	高级中学
29. university	(n)	'juniər̩'vɜːsəti	大学

III. SENTENCES

- She _____ of **school** in the third grade.
- He liked all his _____ very much.
- Don't _____ too much time watching television.
- She asked God for _____ in what to do.
- One of his mom's _____ was that he could only watch television two times per week.
- After reading the book, she wrote a _____.
- He _____ the black rock from a book he had read.
- He **graduated** with _____ from **high school**.
- She had little _____, but she still raised very successful children.
- There is no job more important than _____.

IV. DISCUSSION

The person who has taught me the most is _____.

Who?

taught me

He/She/It

What?

¹ image:  (1996–*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4941440)

V. READING



Mom's Five Rules

Sonya was from a very poor family. She had 23 brothers and sisters. She dropped out of school in the 3rd grade. She got married when she was only 13 years old—to a man who was 28. She gave birth (生孩子) to two boys, Curtis and Ben. But Sonya later found that her husband had another “wife”,...and even other children—he had a complete additional family. Sonya and her husband divorced (离婚). She worked two and sometimes three jobs. She was so depressed (沮丧) that sometimes she would stay in a mental hospital (精神病院).



Ben wasn't doing well in **school**. When Ben was in the fifth grade, he was last in his class, and his **classmates** called him “dummy”. Ben didn't try very hard in **school**. After school, Ben liked to play outside and watch television.²

But Sonya wanted a better life for her sons. She prayed and asked God for **wisdom**. One day, she came home, turned off the television, and said to Ben and Curtis, “Boys, you're **wasting** too much of your time *in front of that television.*” And she said, “*The Lord's told me what to do.*” Then she went on to list five new **rules**:³

1. They could only watch two television **programs** a week.
2. They could only watch television after they finished their **homework**.
3. They could only play outside after they finished their **homework**.
4. They must read two books from the **library** each week.
5. They must write a **book report** every week.

In the beginning, Ben didn't like these new **rules** at all. But over time, he found that he loved **learning**. After writing his **book reports**, he would give them to his mom to read. Sonya would mark (批改) them with highlights and check marks, and then return them. But Sonya had a secret: She could not read—at least not well enough to understand what they had written. However, Ben did not know this until several years later.



² Carson and Murphey (1992): *Think big...*, page 16

³ Carson and Murphey (1992): *Think big...*, pages 16–18

Ben's knowledge grew quickly. One day Ben's **science** teacher brought a glass-like, black rock to class. "Does anyone know what this is?", asked the teacher. Ben **recognized** it from a book he had read. He told the class that the black rock was called obsidian (黑曜岩) and how obsidian was formed. His teacher was amazed. His classmates were amazed.⁴ But there was someone else who was amazed—Ben himself was amazed.⁵ Ben later recalled, "*It was at that moment that I realized I wasn't stupid.*"⁶



In a period of about a year and a half, Ben went from being at the bottom of his class to being at the top. He **graduated** with **honors** from **high school**. He went on to **study** at Yale **University**, and later at the University of Michigan medical school where he studied neurosurgery (神经外科).



conjoined twins



medical team



separation

Curtis became an engineer. Ben went on to become one of the best brain surgeons (外科医生) in the world. In 1987, he was the first doctor to ever successfully separate twins (双胞胎) who were joined at their heads—an operation (手术) that required 22 hours and a 70 person medical team.



⁴ Carson and Murphey (1992): *Think big...*, page 21

⁵ Carson and Murphey (2005): *Think Big: Unleashing Your Potential for Excellence*, pages 21–22

⁶ <http://www.achievement.org/autodoc/page/car1bio-1>

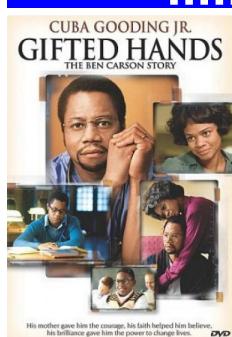


Even after becoming a famous doctor, Ben has not forgotten what his mother has done for him. Ben has said, “*My story is really my mother’s story—a woman with little formal education or worldly goods who used her position as a parent to change the lives of many people around the globe. There is no job more important than parenting.*”⁷

REFERENCES

1. article: Howell, Arnesa: Dr. Ben Carson to Receive 91st Springarn Medal. *The Crisis*, July–August 2006 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=wEIEAAAAMBAJ&pg=PA54>>
2. book: Carson, Ben and Murphey, Cecil B.: *Gifted Hands*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1990 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0310546508>>, ISBN 0310546508
3. book: Carson, Ben and Murphey, Cecil B.: *Think big: unleashing your potential for excellence*. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, February 17 1992 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0310574102>>, ISBN 0310574102
4. book: Carson, Ben and Murphey, Cecil B.: *Think Big: Unleashing Your Potential for Excellence*. reprint edition. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2005 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0310269008>>
5. audio: Carson, Ben: There Is No Job More Important Than Parenting. *npr.org*, October 10 2005 <URL: <http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=4950531>>
6. news: <http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=4950531>
7. video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=9haZDohtYbc>
8. video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IuYmhJUeoBE>
9. web: <http://www.jhu.edu/jhumag/0205web/separate.html>

VI. VIDEO



*Gifted Hands—The Benjamin Carson Story*⁸

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=WDfS3chU0i8>

⁷ quote: Carson (2005): *npr.org*

image: <http://www.historyswomen.com/amazingmoms/SonyaCarson.html>

⁸ image: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gifted-hands-movie.jpg>

VII. DISCUSSION

1. What do you think of Sonya's **rules** for Ben?
2. Ben's mom had very little **education**. Yet she was very **wise** in raising children. Why do you think this was so?
3. One friend said to Sonya, "*What are you doing to those boys, making them study all the time? They're going to hate you.*" But Sonya replied, "*They can hate me, but they're going to get a good education just the same.*"⁹ What do you think of what each of them said?
4. Ben said, "I didn't think I would understand (了解) the material (教材), so I didn't pay attention (注意)."¹⁰ Why do you think some students don't pay attention? How could classes be changed to help students like Ben?
5. Ben said, "I was in a White school, and the expectations (期望) for Black students weren't very high. And you tend to live up to expectations."¹¹ If people don't expect much of you, do you work harder, less hard, or it makes no difference?
6. One poem that Sonya liked was *The Road Not Taken* (未走之路) by Robert Frost (佛洛斯特).¹² What do you think the poem means?

... two roads diverged in a wood, and I —
I took the one less traveled by,
And that has made all the difference.

曾々有々兩々條々小々路々在々樹々林々中々分々岔々，
我々選々了々一々條々人々跡々稀々少々的々行々走々，
結々果々後々來々的々一々切々都々截々然々不々同々。
¹³

VIII. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. school is _____.	My favorite subject in I like it because _____
DRAMA:	What rules might you use someday for your children?	

⁹ Carson and Murphey (1990): *Gifted Hands*, page 37

¹⁰ Howell (2006): *The Crisis*, page 54

¹¹ Howell (2006): *The Crisis*, page 54

¹² Carson and Murphey (1990): *Gifted Hands*, page 64

¹³ poem: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Road_Not_Taken_\(poem\)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Road_Not_Taken_(poem))
translation: <http://chchen.xxc.idv.tw/poetry/>

¹⁴ Source(s) of images. (1996–*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

ENGLISH/中文	KK/(G)	ENGLISH/中文	KK/(G)
1.  art 艺术	art (n)	8.  history 历史	'hɪstəri (n)
2.  music 音乐	'mjuzɪk (n)	9.  math 数学	'mæθ (n)
3.  physical education 体育	'fɪzɪkl̩ ˌedju'keʃən (n)	10.  algebra 代数学	'ældzəbrə (n)
4.  Chinese 中文	'tʃaɪ'nīz (n)	11.  trigonometry 三角函数	,trɪgə'namətri (n)
5.  English 英文	'ɪnglɪʃ (n)	12.  science 科学	'saɪəns (n)
6.  French 法语	frenʃ (n)	13.  biology 生物学	baɪ'ɒlədʒi (n)
7.  geography 地理学	'dʒrəfɪ (n)	14.  computer class 电脑课	kəm'pjutər klæs (n)

14

IX. SONG

song title: *Wonderful World* (1960) | album: *The Wonderful World of Sam Cooke*
 singer: Sam Cooke | lyrics: Sam Cooke, Lou Adler, Herb Alpert

lyrics: <http://www.metrolyrics.com/wonderful-world-lyrics-sam-cooke.html>
 mp3: <http://www.amazon.com/Wonderful-World/dp/B001BG0N36/>
 video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VF6JMzbHYM>

Hints (暗示): biology, French, geography, history, love, one, rule, science, student, trigonometry, trying, two, win, wonderful, world

1. Don't know much about _____
2. Don't know much _____
3. Don't know much about a _____ book
4. Don't know much about the _____ I took
5. But I do know that I _____ you
6. And I _____ that if you love me too
7. What a _____ this would be
8. Don't know much about _____
9. Don't know much _____
10. Don't know much about _____
11. Don't know what a slide _____ (計算尺) is for
12. But I do know that _____ and _____ is _____
13. And if this _____ could be with you
14. What a _____ this would be
15. Now I don't claim to be an "A" _____
16. But I'm _____ to be
17. So maybe by being an "A" _____ baby,
18. I can _____ your love for me
...

 **LESSON 5: The Race**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. athlete	(n)	'æθlit	运动员	12. fastest	(adj)	'fæstest	最快的
2. hero	(n)	'hɪro	英雄	13. exhausted	(adj)	ɪg'zɔ:tɪd	精疲力竭
3. traitor	(n)	'tretər	叛国者	14. honor	(v)	'a:nər	尊荣
4. Olympics	(n)	o'lɪmpɪks	奥运会	15. start	(n)	start	起点
5. track	(n)	træk	跑道	16. finish	(n)	'finɪʃ	终点
6. win	(v)	wɪn	赢得	17. starting gun	(n)	'startɪŋ gʌn	发令枪
7. gold medal	(n)	gold 'medl	金牌	18. meter	(n)	'mitər	公尺
8. record	(n)	'rekə:d	纪录	19. yard	(n)	yard	码
9. humble	(adj)	'hʌmb'l	谦逊的	20. sprint	(v)	sprint	全速疾跑
10. proud	(adj)	praʊd	骄傲的	21. collapse	(v)	kə'læps	晕倒
11. fast	(adj)	fæst	快的	22. cheer	(v)	tʃɪr	欢呼

II. SENTENCES

- He became a _____ to people everywhere.
- They called him a _____ to his country.
- The _____ sounded, they all started running.
- After **sprinting** 200 meters, he was _____ and _____.
- She won a _____ in the **Olympics**.
- All the runners **sprinted** from _____ to _____.
- The crowd was _____ during the entire race.
- His time of 42 seconds was a new **Olympic** _____.

III. READING

Not On Sunday



parents, wedding day, 1899



the Liddell family, 1907



Rob, Jenny, Ernest, and Eric; 1915

1

Eric Liddell's (李爱锐) parents were both from Scotland (苏格兰). But Eric himself wasn't born in Scotland. He was born in 1902 in TiānJīn (天津), China. His parents were missionaries there.

¹  <http://www.ericliddell.org/ericliddell/photographs/eric-liddell>



Eric and Rob, 1908



Eric

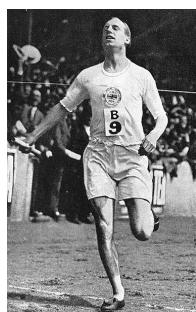


Eric

When he was five years old, he and his brother moved to England where they attended a boarding school. Eric grew up. As a young 22 year old man, he was not so handsome. And people even laughed at the way he ran.



1922 rugby photo



running



1922



1924 London



1924 relay runner

But Eric became an outstanding **athlete**, and was even named the “best athlete of the year” at his school. Despite this, Eric was still said to be very **humble**.

And Eric could run. He could run **fast**. In fact, he became known as the **fastest** runner in Scotland, and became a **hero** to the people there. Eric even became a runner for the British Olympic team for the 1924 Summer **Olympics** in Paris. Eric's best event was the 100 **meter** race. In 1923 Eric had won a 100 **yard** race with a record time of 9.7 seconds.² The people in Scotland were so happy—they had a very good chance to win a **gold medal**.

But the 100 meter race in the 1924 Olympics was to be held on a Sunday. Eric believed that Sunday was for God and that he should be in church on Sunday, not running races. So Eric said he would not run in this race. The people of Scotland were angry. Eric was no longer their **hero**. Now they called him a **traitor**. But Eric would not change his mind no matter what people said.

The 400 meter race was not to be held on Sunday. So even though he was not so good at this race, he chose to run in this one for the 1924 Olympics. The day of the 400 meter race came. Eric was in the outside lane—the “worst” lane to be in. Next to him was American runner Horatio Fitch—he had recently broken the 400 meter world record. And next to him was Swiss runner Joseph Imbach—he had also broken the 400 meter world record. Everyone expected the race to be between Horatio and Joseph. No one thought Eric had any real chance to **win**. But yet before the race began, someone had left a note for Eric with something from the Bible written on it. It said, “Those who honor me I will honor.”³



The **starting gun** sounded. The race began. Normally in a 400 **meter** race, runners **start** slow and

² Marshall: *Recollections of Eric Liddell* By Sir Arthur Marshall

³ *The Bible* (from I Samuel 2:30)

finish sprinting. If someone tried to sprint the entire 400 meters, they would become **exhausted** and maybe even **collapse**. But Eric's idea was, "*I run the first 200m as hard as I can. Then, for the second 200m, with God's help, I run harder.*"⁴

Eric started the race with a **sprint**. He was in front of everyone. He reached the 200 meter mark in only 22.2 seconds. He was still in the lead, but only 3 meters behind him was British runner *Guy Butler*, and Horatio Fitch was also getting closer.⁵

Eric should be **exhausted** and slowing down. But yet somehow he was still in front. The crowd was so shocked that instead of **cheering**, they became silent. Then as the runners were around the last 100 **meters** of the race, Horatio came within 2 meters behind Eric. The crowd believed Horatio was making his final winning move and started **cheering** again.⁶



Eric Liddell (Britain)	Horatio Fitch (USA)	Joseph Imbach (Switzerland)	John Taylor (USA)	Guy Butler (Britain)	David Johnson (Canada)
1st place	2nd place	(collapsed)	5th	3rd place	4th place
47.6 seconds	48.4 seconds		1min 7sec (est.)	48.6 seconds	48.8 seconds
22 years old	23 years old	29 years old	23 years old	24 years old	22 years old

But Eric threw his head back, thrashed his arms back and forth like a wild man, and started running even faster. Horatio later said, "*I couldn't believe a man could set such a pace and finish....He didn't weaken. With the tape only 20 yards away, I again spurted closer, but Liddell threw his head farther back, gathered himself together, and shot forward.*"⁷ No one could catch him. The great Joseph Imbach even **collapsed** while trying. Eric crossed the **finish** line first, 5 meters ahead of Horatio Fitch. Eric had come in first place with a time of 47.6 seconds. It was a new **Olympic record**.



1924 Olympics, 400 meter race



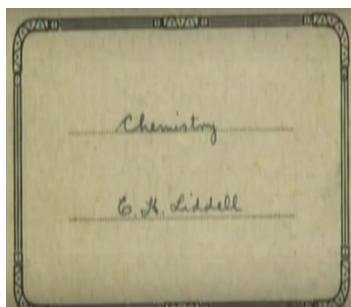
Eric's being carried from his school



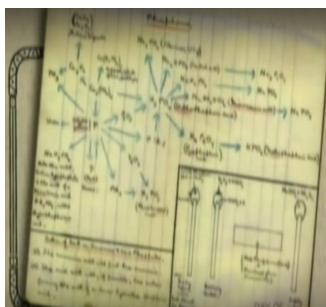
Harold Abrahams

⁴ Burnton (2012a): *The Guardian*⁵ Benge and Benge (1998): *Eric Liddell: Something Greater Than Gold*, page 12⁶ Benge and Benge (1998): *Eric Liddell: Something Greater Than Gold*, page 12⁷ Burnton (2012a): *The Guardian*

As for the 100 meter race, Eric Liddell's teammate Harold Abrahams won a **gold medal** for Britain in that race anyways. So now Britain had two **gold medals** for the two races rather than just one.



Eric's chemistry textbook



Eric's chemistry textbook



wedding 1934



Eric at HéBěi Shào Chāng (河北绍昌)

Eric was again a much loved **hero** in Britain. But in 1925, he left there to return to China, where at the time, many many Chinese people hated British people. There, he taught chemistry, and even wrote his own textbook from memory.⁸ In China he married a girl whose parents were from Canada. In 1931, Japan invaded northern China, and in 1937 the remaining parts of China. In 1941 Eric sent his pregnant wife and their two daughters to Canada...but Eric himself stayed in China.



Japanese invasion of China (热河省), 1933



ShānDōng WéiXiàn (山東濰縣)



wife Florence and daughters Patricia, Heather, and Maureen

9

Eventually Eric was sent to a prison camp at ShānDōng Wéi Xiàn (山東濰縣). Once he had a chance to leave the camp, but he arranged for a pregnant woman to leave instead of himself.¹⁰ In 1945, when he was only 43 years old, Eric died in that camp. Just five months later, he would have been set free. He never saw his youngest daughter Maureen before he died.

REFERENCES

1. book: Benge, Geoff and Benge, Janet: *Eric Liddell: Something Greater Than Gold*. Y.W.A.M. Publishers, September 1 1998, Christian Heroes: Then & Now (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN1576581373>), ISBN 978-1576581377
2. article: Burnton: 50 stunning Olympic moments: No8 Eric Liddell's 400 metres win, 1924. The Guardian, January 04 2012a (URL: <http://www.theguardian.com/sport/2012/jan/04/50-stunning-olympic-moments-eric-liddell>)
3. book: Burnton, Simon: *From Budd to Bolt: 50 Stunning Sporting Moments*. Guardian Books, 2012b (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN0852654510>), ISBN 9780852654514
4. web: <http://www.ericliddell.org/>
5. web: <http://www.sports-reference.com/olympics/summer/1924/ATH/mens-400-metres.html>
6. video: *The Flying Scotsman takes gold and sets a new record—Eric Liddell—Paris 1924 Olympic Games*. (URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IYNUxdoIacA>)
7. video: *Eric Liddell—Original Footage of his Gold Medal Winning Race*. 1924 (URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fRdrtp5YAxU>)
8. web: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Athletics_at_the_1924_Summer_Olympics_%E2%80%93_Men%27s_400_metres
9. docu.: Naireland, Joe: Eric Liddell. Day of Discovery, 2014 April 13 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zVKvCCZre1E>)
10. daughter: Liddell, Maureen: Our Magic Circle: Reflections of Eric Liddell by His Daughter Maureen. Day of Discovery, August 17 2012 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5inAjERMZOE>)
11. teammate: Marshall, Sir Arthur: Recollections of Eric Liddell By Sir Arthur Marshall. (URL: <http://www.ericliddell.org/ericliddell/1924-olympics>)

⁸ ↗ Naireland (2014 April 13): *Day of Discovery*

⁹ ↗ <http://www.ericliddell.org/ericliddell/photographs/eric-liddell>

¹⁰ ↗ Burnton (2012a): *The Guardian*

IV. VIDEO

There is a movie based on Eric's life called [Chariots of Fire](#) (火战车).
Here is a clip from this movie about the 1924 Olympic 400 meter race:

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=uwyltmUR3MU>

**V. DISCUSSION**

1. Eric ran the 400 meter race in the outside lane of the track. This is considered the worst lane to be in.¹¹ Why do you think this is so?¹²
2. Even though Eric was a great athlete, he was still very _____. How could this be?
3. Eric thought it was wrong to run a race on _____. Should Eric have run the 100 meter race on Sunday anyways?
4. Why did Eric start the 400 meter race running so fast? What was he thinking?
5. Eric stayed in China even though he knew it was very dangerous. Why did he do this? What would you have done?
6. Eric died never having seen _____. Did he make a bad decision to stay in China or a good one?

VI. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. My favorite day is _____.	What's your favorite day or holiday? Why do you like it?
	I like it because _____	
DRAMA:	Make your own holiday. What is your holiday about and what do people do on this holiday?	

VII. JOKES

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. Sunday	(n)	'sʌnde	星期天	5. Thursday	(n)	'θɜːzdeɪ	星期四
2. Monday	(n)	'mʌnde	星期一	6. Friday	(n)	'fraɪde	星期五
3. Tuesday	(n)	'tjuzde	星期二	7. Saturday	(n)	'sætədeɪ	星期六
4. Wednesday	(n)	'wenzde	星期三				

1. What two days of the week begin with the letter "t"? _____ and _____.
Hint: the answer is *not* Tuesday and Thursday.
2. How many seconds are in a year? _____
Hint: the answer is *less than* 100.

¹¹ Benge and Benge (1998): *Eric Liddell: Something Greater Than Gold* page 11

¹² Many thanks to Kevin Keleghan for his excellent explanation of this issue (2012 August 24).

VIII. DAYS OF THE WEEK

1. Sunday	day
2. Monday	day
3. Tuesday	day Roman god of _____ and _____ planet from the sun
4. Wednesday	day Roman god of _____ and _____ planet from the sun
5. Thursday	day Norse god of _____
6. Friday	day Germanic goddess of _____
7. Saturday	day Roman god of _____ and _____ planet from the sun

images, planets: (1996–*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>); others: © Greenhoe:

IX. HOLIDAYS

	ENGLISH/中文	KK/(G)	ENGLISH/中文	KK/(G)
1.	New Year's Day 元旦	(n)	6. Father's Day 父亲节	(n)
2.	Valentine's Day 情人节	(n)	7. Independence Day 美国独立纪念日	(n)
3.	Easter 复活节	(n)	8. Halloween 万圣节	(n)
4.	Earth Day 世界地球日	(n)	9. Thanksgiving 感恩节	(n)
5.	Mother's Day 母亲节	(n)	10. Christmas 圣诞节	(n)

In the United States...

1.		_____	is	_____	What month?	_____	What day?		
2.		_____	is	_____	What month?	_____	What day?		
3.		_____	is	_____	What month?	_____	What day?		
4.		_____	is the	_____	first/second/third/fourth	_____	What day?	_____	What month?

¹⁴Source(s) of images. (1996–*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

5.  is the _____ of .
first/second/third/fourth What day? What month?
6.  is _____ .
What month? What day?
7.  is _____ .
What month? What day?
8.  is the _____ of .
first/second/third/fourth What day? What month?
9.  is _____ .
What month? What day?

X. SONG

song title:	<i>Except For Monday</i> (1991)	album:	<i>Something in Red</i>
singer:	Lorrie Morgan	lyrics:	Reed Nielsen
lyrics:	http://www.cowboylyrics.com/lyrics/morgan-lorrie/except-for-monday-3654.html		
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/Except-For-Monday/dp/B002UGIVYY		
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7b91EWLISrg		

Hints: dances, glances, goodbye, Kicking, Painting, roll, surprised, think

1. You look _____
 2. You didn't _____ you'd see me
 3. _____ up my heels
 4. _____ up this town
 5. When you said _____
 6. Learned a couple new _____
 7. Cast a couple of _____
 8. I'm on a big _____ now ...
 9. Except for _____ which was never good anyway
 10. _____ I get a little sideways
 11. _____ I feel better just for spite
 12. _____ and _____ take too long
 13. Before I knew it, _____ gone
 14. But it's _____ now you can bet that I'm alright
- ...

XI. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG

1 happy	sad	angry	afraid	nervous	bored	surprised	worried	depressed	see	hear	smell	touch	embarrassed
short	big	small	heavy	light	tall	short	fat	thin	brush my teeth	do my homework			
laugh	run	sing	dance	read	cook	paint	drive						

15

1. You look _____

surprised

2. You didn't _____ you'd _____

see

me

3. _____ up my _____

Kicking

heels

4. _____ up this _____

Painting

town

5. When you said _____

goodbye

6. I learned how to _____

dance

7. I'm _____

in/on/under/...

a/an

big

roll

now.

images. (1996-*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

 **LESSON 6: Outdoor Activities**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. camp	(v)	kæmp	露营	12. alive	(adj)	ə'laɪv	活着的
2. campsite	(n)	'kæmpsaɪt	露营地	13. die	(v)	daɪ	死
3. hike	(n)	haɪk	健行	14. dead	(adj)	dɛd	死的
4. hiker	(n)	'haɪkə	健行者	15. freeze	(v)	frɪz	冰冻
5. ski	(v)	ski	滑雪	16. hypothermia	(n)	haɪpə'θɜːmɪə	低体温症
6. tent	(n)	tent	帐篷	17. attack	(v)	ə'tæk	攻击
7. sleeping bag	(n)	'slɪpɪŋ bæg	睡袋	18. human	(n/adj)	'hjuːmən	人类
8. fire	(n)	faɪr	火	19. military	(n/adj)	'mɪlɪə,tərɪ	军用的
9. landscape	(n)	'lænd,skep	风景	20. weather	(n)	'wɛðə	天气
10. forest	(n)	'fɔːrɪst	森林	21. search	(n/v)	sɜːtʃ	搜索
11. pine tree	(n)	'paɪn tri	松树	22. rescue	(n/v)	'rɛskju	营救

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
23. investigate	(v)	ɪn'vesteɪget	调查
24. investigator	(n)	ɪn'vesteɪgetə	调查者
25. freeze to death	(v)	frɪz tu dɛθ	冻死
26. weather service	(n)	'wɛðər 'sɜːvɪs	气象局
27. search and rescue	(n)	sɜːtʃ ænd 'rɛskju	搜救

II. SENTENCES

- They started a five day _____ to the mountain.
- They hiked for five days and _____ along the way.
- We slept in a 4 person _____.
- We got lost and couldn't find our _____.
- They were afraid of being _____ by a bear.
- To stay warm, they lit a _____.
- The zipper got stuck and I couldn't get out of my _____.
- While hiking in the snow, he almost _____ to death.
- The hikers got lost in the snow and all suffered from _____.
- The _____ said that it will snow tonight.

III. GEOGRAPHY**IV. READING****The Dyatlov Pass Mystery**

Yuri Yudin, became sick and turned back



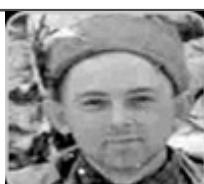
Igor Dyatlov (23), died between tree and campsite



Zina Kolmogorova (22), died between tree and campsite



Rustem Slobodin (23), died between tree and campsite



Georgyi Krivonischenko (24), died under tree



Yuri Doroshenko (21), died under tree



Nicolas Thibeaux Brignolle (24)



Lyudmila Dubinina (21)



Alexander Zolotarev (37)



Alexander Kolevatov (25), last to die, died in his sleep

In 1959, eight men and 2 women left for a **hiking** and **skiing** trip in the Ural Mountains in Russia. They were young, and all very experienced mountain **hikers**.



train (January 25)



truck to Vizhay (January 26)



skiing to Ortorten



landscape

The **hikers** started off on their trip by boarding a train on January 25. The next day a truck took them to Vizhay—the last town on their trip. On January 27, they started a very long **hike** to a mountain

called, "Otorten"—which in the local Mansi language, means "Do not go there". One of them, Yury Yudin, got sick and turned back the next day. The remaining nine **hiked** for five days, **camping** along the way.



Yuri prepares to turn back (late January)



having fun



Nicolas?, Lyudmila, Alexander Z. and Zina

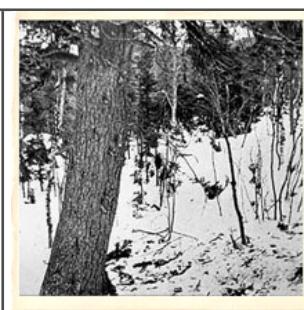
By 4pm on February 1, they were only 10 miles from Otorten. From photographs, they look happy. They set up **camp** at a place called, "Kolat Sianko"—which in the Mansi language means, "Mountain of the Dead". They ate a meal around 6pm. At least some of them entered their **tents**. It was a cold and windy night—about minus 15 degrees Celcius with about a 10 kilometer per hour wind.



setting up camp (February 2, about 5pm)



tent ripped from the inside



pine tree

Around 10pm, something very strange happened. What exactly did happen, nobody knows. But it seems that they were scared—very, very scared. They were so scared that they all ran from their **tents** through the cold and snow down the hill towards the **forest** about 300 meters away. They were in such a hurry that one **tent** was even cut and ripped open from the inside. And some were running through the snow in only their underwear and socks, or even barefoot. What were they so afraid of? Nobody knows. But evidence says that whatever it was, it was not a **human**, and was not an animal.

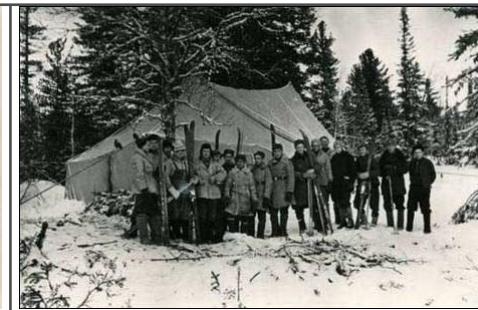
The nine hikers hid under a large **pine tree** about 2 kilometers from their **tents**. Trying to stay warm, they shared clothes and lit a **fire**. The pine tree was found to have **broken branches**—suggesting that maybe at least one of them tried to climb it to see their **campsite**. The **fire** and little clothing they had was not enough to keep them **alive**. They were **freezing to death**. Three of them did eventually try to return to the **campsite**. But none of them made it—one by one they dropped dead of **hypothermia**. For some reason, the other six didn't even try to go back. All of them eventually froze to death.



helicopter at Kholat Syakhl



search and rescue team



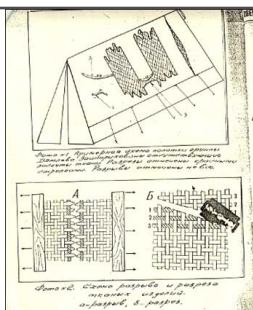
search and rescue team

By February 20, there was no word from the nine **hikers**. A **search and rescue team** was sent. They

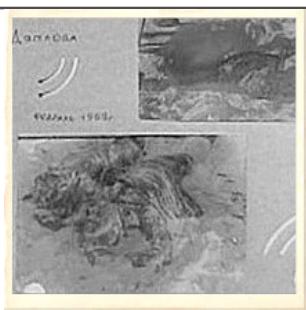
did not find them. So the **military** started looking for them using airplanes and helicopters, and finally an airplane found the **campsite**.



tent (February 26)



report about tent



bodies

The bodies of all of the hikers were found. But something strange had happened to at least some of them. Some had a strange orange color on them. Rustom was found with a 17 centimeter skull fracture. Blood was found near Zinaida's body. Three were found to have broken ribs—as if hit by a speeding car; but the injuries were on the inside of their bodies only, not on the outside. Lyudmila was found with her tongue ripped out of her body. But despite these injuries, none of the trees or anything else nearby was harmed.



metal piece found nearby



2013 May 30 San Diego County USA

That same night, a group that was camping about 50 kilometers south said they saw strange orange balls floating in the sky in the direction of where the 9 died. There were also people in the **weather service** and **military** who said they saw “bright flying spheres” in that area in February and March. Lev Ivanov, the chief **investigator**, was told to stop his **investigation** and to make it secret. But some 31 years later, in 1990, he said, “I suspected at the time and am almost sure now that these bright flying spheres had a direct connection to the group’s death”.¹



Yury Yudin (lone survivor) died 2013 April 27, age 76

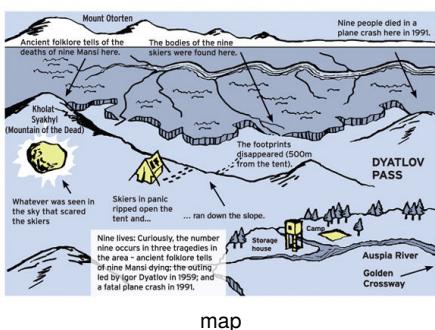


last (33rd) picture in Yuri K.'s camera



Yury Yudin said, “If I had a chance to ask God just one question, it would be, ‘What really happened to my friends that night?’”

¹ Osadchuk (2008): *The St. Petersburg Times*



map



2

Mansi legend

Nine people died there that night in 1959. "Nine" is a kind of special number in that area. In one Mansi legend, nine Mansi men were once on the "Mountain of the Dead" long ago. They also never returned—all nine were found dead. And in 1991, an airplane is said to have crashed in the area...killing nine people.

REFERENCES

- newspaper: Osadchuk, Svetlana: Mysterious Deaths of 9 Skiers Still Unresolved. The St. Petersburg Times, February 19 2008, Nr. 1349 (URL: <http://www.sptimes.ru/story/25093>)
- book: McCloskey, Keith: *Mountain of the Dead: The Dyatlov Pass Incident*. The History Press, July 1 2013 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0752494074>, ISBN 9780752494074)
- book: Eichar, Donnie: *Dead Mountain: The Untold True Story of the Dyatlov Pass Incident*. Chronicle Books, October 22 2013 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1452129568>, ISBN 9781452129563)
- web: http://www.aquiziam.com/dyatlov_pass_1.html
- web: http://www.alpklubspb.ru/ass/dyatlov_03.htm
- video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=m5KmbuSrqEk>
- web: <http://onerussian.eu/the-dyatlov-pass-incident-february-1959-ural-mountains-russia-nine-missing-skiers-found-dead-cause-28/04/2015/>

V. DISCUSSION



- What do you think happened to the nine hikers?
- Would you go camping there?
- What do you think about the orange balls in the sky?
- If you saw orange ball in the sky, what would you do?

VI. PRESENTATION



INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. Someday I would like to go to _____ and go where? _____
DRAMA:	You and your friends go camping at the "Mountain of the Dead". What happens?

²map: <http://onerussian.eu/the-dyatlov-pass-incident-february-1959-ural-mountains-russia-nine-missing-skiers-found-dead-cause-28/04/2015/>

VII. SONG

song title:	<i>The Climb</i> (2009)	album:	<i>Hannah Montana: The Movie</i>
singer:	Miley Cyrus	lyrics:	Jessi Alexander and Jon Mabe
lyrics:	http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/mileycyrus/theclimb.html		
mp3:			
video:	https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=uWj43alu1zg		

Hints (提示): climb, dreaming, fast, head, lose, lost, mountain, move, reach, see, shaking, side, step, there, trying, uphill, voice, waiting,

1. I can almost _____ it
2. That _____ I am _____
3. But there's a _____ inside my _____ saying
4. "You'll never _____ it"
5. Every _____ I'm taking
6. Every _____ I make feels
7. _____ with no direction
8. My faith is _____
9. But I gotta keep _____
10. Gotta keep my _____ held high
11. There's always gonna be another _____
12. I'm always gonna wanna make it _____
13. Always gonna be an _____ battle
14. Sometimes I'm gonna have to _____
15. Ain't about how _____ I get _____
16. Ain't about what's _____ on the other _____
17. It's the _____ .

LESSON 7: I am a Fish

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. swim	(v)	swim	游泳	11. guard	(v)	gard	守卫
2. swimsuit	(n)	'swimsut	泳衣	12. protect	(v)	prə'tekt	保护
3. snorkel	(n)	'snɔrk!	浮潜	13. lifeguard	(n)	'laɪf,gard	救生员
4. facemask	(n)	'fesmæsk	潜水面镜	14. Coast Guard	(n)	kost gard	海岸警卫队
5. goggles	(n)	goglz	蛙镜	15. drown	(v)	draʊn	淹死
6. beach	(n)	bits	海滩	16. choke	(v)	'tʃok	窒息
7. coast	(n)	kost	海岸	17. breathe	(v)	brið	呼吸
8. life	(n)	laɪf	生活	18. current	(n)	'kɜːənt	水流
9. rescue	(v)	'rɛskju	救	19. survive	(v)	sə'veɪv	生存
10. save	(v)	sev	救	20. tidal wave	(n)	'taɪdl wev	海啸

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
21. swimmer	(n)	swɪmə	游泳着

II. SENTENCES

- She is the fastest _____ in our school.
- He works as a _____ at the **beach**.
- Help! Help! I am _____ !
- She jumped into the water to _____ the man.
- He was having trouble _____ and was turning blue.
- You can breathe underwater using a _____ .
- You can see more clearly underwater if you wear a _____ .
- I want to go swimming but I can't find my _____ .
- Don't let the strong _____ pull you under water.
- If you want to swim, you must learn to _____ in the water.

III. READING

The Lifeguard who was fired for choosing to save a life



Tomas Lopez



Hallandale Beach sign



Hallandale Beach lifeguard

Help¹

In 2012, twenty-one year old Tomas Lopez had been working for about 4 months as a **lifeguard** at Hallandale Beach in Florida. While at his **lifeguard** stand on July 2, a guest came running up to Tomas and told him that someone was **drowning**.

¹  (1996-*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4953656)



"SWIM AT YOUR OWN RISK"=no lifeguard



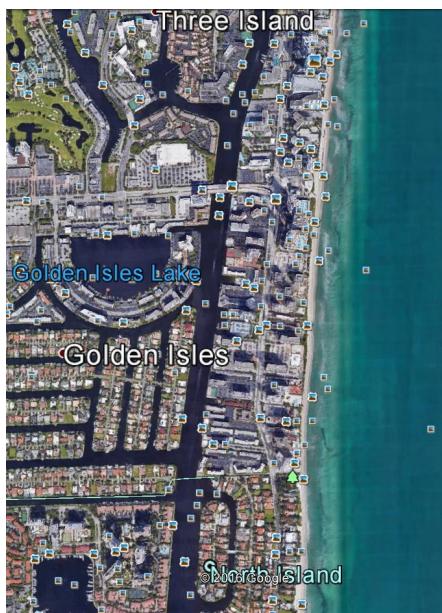
"You get back to your tower"



2

Jeff Ellis Management logo

But the problem was that the **drowning** man was about 500 meters outside the area that Tomas was supposed to protect. Tomas was working for a company called *Jeff Ellis Management*. The rules were very clear—**lifeguards** were to never leave their area. But Tomas just couldn't stay there and let the man **drown**. Instead, he radioed to the other **lifeguards** that he was leaving his area to **rescue** the man, and he started running. His supervisor told him by radio, "Don't go. You go back to your tower. You get back to your tower."³ But Tomas told his supervisor, "I'm not going back." Tomas later said, "...a stupid rule, over someone's life...it's a pretty obvious choice..."⁴



Hallandale Beach area—Google Earth

Marisol Azofra also helped⁵

Tomas ran and ran, and finally saw the man out in the water. By the time Tomas got to the man, the man "was having a lot of trouble **breathing**" and was turning blue.⁶ Tomas pulled him out of the water, the man was taken to a hospital, and was soon fine. Tomas was a hero.

Another **lifeguard** watched Tomas' area for him while he was gone rescuing the man. However, almost immediately after the **rescue**, Tomas was fired by *Jeff Ellis Management* because he had left his area.

²"tower" photo credit: *South Beach Hoosier*, ©2013 Hallandale Beach Blog, <http://hallandalebeachblog.blogspot.tw/2012/07/>. Permission for use requested.

³ *Burnett (2012): Erin Burnett OutFront* (0min 25sec)

⁴ *Burnett (2012): Erin Burnett OutFront* (1min 51sec)

⁵ Besides Tomas, three other guests also helped. Marisol Azofra was one of them. Interviewer: "What made you do this?" Marisol Azofra: ``I don't know. ...I was just sitting in my chair, and, and, and, I couldn't stop it. I mean, I just had to go and get him. Because nobody seemed to want to do it. You know, they were scared I guess.'' *Rozier (2012b): Lifeguard meets teen he saved before being fired*

⁶ *Zarrella and Mungin (2012): CNN*

After seeing what the company did to Tomas, three other **lifeguards** working for the same company quit. And two other **lifeguards** that worked for the company said they would have done the same thing that Tomas did. So the company fired them too.



Tomas with 2 other fired lifeguards



6 lifeguards who lost their jobs

Tomas has said, "I have no doubts I did the right thing. I believe I did what was right, and that if someone needs help you're going to go help them, regardless if you're a **lifeguard** or not."⁷

Jeff Ellis Management later offered to hire back all the **lifeguards**. But Tomas and all the other lifeguards said no. Tomas was not angry or bitter but said, "It's another chapter in my life closed and I am just going to continue to get my schooling finished and get on with my career."⁸



Mayor Cooper, Tomas, and Maksim



Maksim and his father

"key to the city"⁹

On July 9, the mayor of Hallandale Beach honored Tomas by giving him a "key to the city". Maksim Samartsev, the man Tomas saved was there. Maksim at the time was 19 years old and is from the country Estonia. He was in the U.S. to visit his father. Maksim's father said to Tomas, "Thank you for saving my son's life. You are now his brother. You are now also my son. Thank you."¹⁰

REFERENCES

1. video: Burnett, Erin: Lifeguard Fired for Saving Swimmer. *Erin Burnett OutFront*, July 5 2012 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vNiB02NNaFU>)
2. article: Zarrella, John and Mungin, Lateef: Florida lifeguard says he's been offered his job back. *CNN*, July 6, 13:44 GMT 2012 (URL: <http://edition.cnn.com/2012/07/05/us/florida-lifeguard-fired/>)
3. article: Rodriguez, Ihosvani: Hallandale Beach honors fired lifeguard with key to the city. *Sun Sentinel*, July 9 2012 (URL: http://articles.sun-sentinel.com/2012-07-09/news/fl-tomas-lopez-hallandale-beach-city-key-20120709_1_jeff-ellis-management-tomas-lopez-lifeguard)
4. news: Bagg, Julia: Fired Lifeguard Gets Key to City: Lifeguard honored for helping save drowning man in Hallandale Beach. *NBC 6 South Florida*, July 9, 7:09 PM EDT 2012 (URL: <http://www.nbciami.com/news/Fired-LifeGuard-Gets-Key-to-City-161803365.html>)
5. news: Teproff, Carli and Illades, Esteban: Hallandale Beach rescuers meet the man whose life they saved. *Miami Herald*, July 9 5:00am 2012 (URL: <http://www.miamiherald.com/latest-news/article1941112.html>)
6. news: Rozier, Angela: Lifeguard meets teen he saved before being fired. July 9 2012b (URL: <https://youtu.be/uYw0QZ9x84M>)
7. news: Rozier, Angela: Lifeguard honored after saving drowning man. July 9 2012a (URL: https://youtu.be/Pu4D_02tSgU)

IV. DISCUSSION



⁷ Zarrella and Mungin (2012): CNN

⁸ Zarrella and Mungin (2012): CNN

⁹ Interesting fact: Tomas Lopez's "grandfather received the key to the city of Miami" in the 1960s Rozier (2012a): *Lifeguard honored after saving drowning man*, Teproff and Illades (2012): *Miami Herald*

¹⁰ Rodriguez (2012): *Sun Sentinel*

1. If you were Tomas, what would you have done?
2. What should Tomas' supervisor have done?
3. If you were Maksim, what would you say or do for Tomas?
4. If you almost **drowned**, would you make any changes in your life?
5. If you were the mayor of Hallandale, what would you do? Would you make any changes?

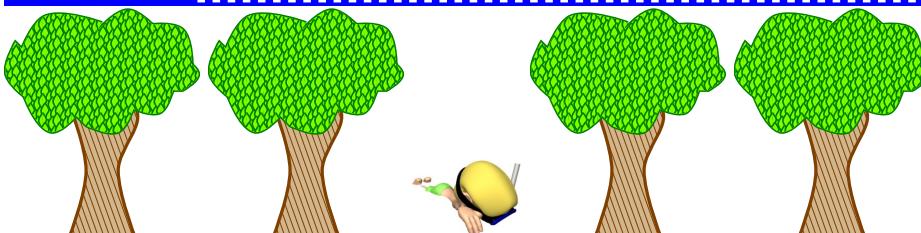
V. DISCUSSION

Do you really really like to swim? How about being a **Coast Guard rescue swimmer**? Actor Kevin Costner portrays a Coast Guard rescue swimmer in the movie, *The Guardian*:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=pBbNYtFGhHU>

VI. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____ . I like to go to _____ . right now I would _____ .	If I were at there Where do you like to go?
DRAMA:	You and your friends decide to swim from Japan to Taiwan. What happens?	

VII. RIDDLE

One day in a huge forest, there is a fire. After one week, Fire fighters finally manage to put out the fire. But later they find a dead man there in the forest. He is only wearing a **swimsuit**, a **snorkel**, and a **facemask**. What happened?¹¹

¹¹reference: <http://goto.bilkent.edu.tr/gunes/lateralthinking.htm>

VIII. SONG

song title:	<i>Swim</i> (2009)	album:	<i>The Glass Passenger</i>
singer:	Andrew McMahon	lyrics:	Jack's Mannequin
lyrics:	http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/jacksmannequin/swim.html		
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/Swim-Album-Version/dp/B001GH64N8/		

video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=3nA0cADsHJ0>

Hints (提示): above, **choking**, **currents**, earth, giving in, hurts, **life**, love, music, **saves**, **survive**, **swim**, **tidal wave**, water, world

1. You've gotta _____
2. Swim for your _____
3. Swim for the _____ that saves you
4. When you're not so sure you'll _____
5. You gotta _____
6. And swim when it _____
7. The whole _____ is watching
8. You haven't come this far to fall off the _____
9. The _____ will pull you _____
10. Away from your _____
11. Just keep your head _____
12. I found a _____ begging to tear down the dawn
13. Memories like bullets they fired at me from a _____
14. A crack in the armor
15. I _____ to brighter days
16. Despite the absence of _____
17. _____ on salt _____
18. I'm not _____
19. I _____





LESSON 8: Living life

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. director	(n)	də'rektər	董事	11. poor	(adj)	pʊr	贫穷的
2. nurse	(n)	nɜ:s	护士	12. rich	(adj)	rɪtʃ	丰富的
3. volunteer	(n)	'valən'tɪr	义工	13. dirty	(adj)	'dɜ:tɪ	肮脏的
4. social worker	(n)	'soʃəl 'wɜ:kər	社工	14. injured	(adj)	'ɪndʒɜ:d	受伤的
5. orphan	(n)	'ɔrfən	孤儿	15. disease	(n)	dɪ'ziz	疾病
6. orphanage	(n)	'ɔrfənɪdʒ	孤儿院	16. collapse	(v)	kə'læps	倒塌
7. relative	(n)	'relətɪv	亲戚	17. abandon	(v)	ə'bændən	抛弃
8. kindergarten	(n)	'kɪndə,gartɪn	幼稚园	18. abuse	(v)	ə'bju:z	虐待
9. college	(n)	'kɔlɪdʒ	大学	19. plan	(n)	plæn	计划
10. hospital	(n)	'ha:s?pɪtl	医院	20. married	(adj)	'mæɪd	结婚了

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
21. class president	(n)	klæs 'prezɪdənt	班代表
22. convertible	(n)	kən'vertəbl	敞篷车
23. non-profit organization	(n)	,nan'prafit ,ɔrgənə'zeɪʃən	非营利性组织
24. Uganda	(n)	ju'gændə	乌干达
25. Tennessee	(n)	,tenə'si	田纳西州

II. SENTENCES

- She drives a yellow _____.
- She is the class _____.
- She _____ to go to **college** and become a _____.
- She was working as a _____ in an orphanage.
- They were all _____ —their parents died several years ago.
- The children were alone because they had been _____.
- They may be **poor** on the outside, but they are _____ on the inside.
- The bathroom was very _____ and full of _____.
- She was _____ when the roof _____ during the rainstorm.
- She is the _____ of a **non-profit organization**.

III. READING

Courage to Love



Katie Davis



Katie and mom



Homecoming Queen



Katie and friend



"that's right, i even do the fish face in africa."



"if you could take a picture of love, this is what it would look like."



"resilience is powerful."



"melbel picked me flowers :)"

2

Katie Davis is from **Tennessee** in the United States. As a high school student, Katie had a beautiful life. She was in the top of her class, was **class president**, and was homecoming queen. She had a boyfriend that she was “in love with and hoped to marry someday.” She had “wonderful supportive parents”. She lived in a beautiful home. She drove a yellow **convertible**. She **planned** to someday go to **college** and become a **nurse**.¹

But in her last year of high school Katie went to **Uganda** for three weeks to **volunteer** at an **orphanage**. She said, “I fell in love with Uganda as soon as I arrived.” All too soon the trip was over and Katie said, “I cried all the way back to **Tennessee** and knew that someday I would return.” She also said, “My heart had found its joy as I served the beautiful people the world calls “**poor**” but who seemed so **rich** in love to me.”³

Katie graduated from high school in 2007. Katie's parents very much wanted her to go to **college** so that she could have a happy and secure life. But no matter what they said, Katie with all her heart wanted first to return to **Uganda**. She promised her parents she would only stay in Uganda for a year, and then come back and go to **college**. And so she left behind her home, comfortable life, and boyfriend to return to Uganda—this time to teach at a **kindergarten**.

¹ Davis and Clark (2011): *Kisses from Katie: A Story of Relentless Love and Redemption* page 6, xvii

² <https://myspace.com/kaaatieeeee/photos>

³ Davis and Clark (2011): *Kisses from Katie: A Story of Relentless Love and Redemption* pages 3–4



Katie and dad



orphans scavenging in Jinja, Uganda



market in Jinja, Uganda

Katie's father didn't like this at all. He even went with Katie to Uganda for her first week there. While there, he saw a place that was **dirty**. He saw much **disease**. He didn't like the way some of the men looked at and talked to his young beautiful daughter. He spent the entire week trying to convince Katie to go back home with him. But he also saw something else—he saw how happy Katie was there. And after a week he went back to the U.S., leaving Katie in her new home.



But in this new home, Katie saw something her father did not. She said, "...I saw only children hungry for love that I was eager to share with them." She also said, "The truth is, I saw myself in those little faces. I looked at them and felt this love that was unimaginable and knew that this is the way God sees me." And the children there loved her too, even running to her "*with gifts of stones or dirt*".⁴



One night there was a rainstorm that made the roof of a small house **collapse**. Inside were three girls. They were all **orphans**—their father had died of AIDS, and their mother had run away and **abandoned** them. Katie could not find any **relatives** of the girls that would take them. She did not want to send them to an **orphanage**. So she rented a house and they started living there. But they did not just live with Katie...Katie actually became their mother. Over time, ten more girls also moved in. Some of the girls had been **abandoned**. Some had been **abused**. Some their parents had become sick with AIDS. Katie became their mother too. By the time Katie was 22 years old, she was the mother of 13 children in Uganda. The oldest of the girls is named Prossy. Prossy said, "*I feel like she's really my mother, because she shows me love and I feel like, yes, this is my mom.*"

⁴ Davis and Clark (2011): *Kisses from Katie: A Story of Relentless Love and Redemption* page 7



Katie never did go back to **college** and never has worked as a **nurse**. But instead she has started and is now the **director** of a **non-profit organization** called *Amazima Ministries*. Amazima feeds 1,200 children five days a week and helps send more than 700 children to school.⁵

Most of the money for feeding the 1200 children comes from selling jewelry made by women there.⁶ Amazima also has programs for very young children and for sick people. In 2012, Amazima started "Farm Project" to teach good farming practices. In July 2015, construction was started on Amazima's very own school called, "*The Amazima School*".⁷



Katie never did marry her high school boyfriend—they broke up. Still Katie wanted to get **married** someday; but with 13 children, that was a little difficult. Then Benji Majors showed up. Benji is from the same town as Katie in the U.S. But they didn't meet there. They met in Uganda! They fell in love, and were **married** January 2nd, 2015. Katie's 13 children love their new dad. Katie said, "*I watch them come alive under the loving gaze of their new father, I hear the delight and the certainty in their voices as they call 'Dad'.*"⁸

⁵ <https://amazima.org/what-we-do/masese-feeding-outreach>, <https://amazima.org/what-we-do/Education-Sponsorship-Outreach>

⁶ *The Amazima Store:* <http://www.amazimastore.org/>

⁷ <http://www.theamazimaschool.org/>

⁸ <https://amazima.org/stories/a-very-personal-update-from-katie>



Table 1.10: some Amazima outreach programs



Many people would say that Katie is brave. But Katie has said, “*I believe that there is only one truly courageous thing we can do in life: to love unconditionally. Absolutely, with all of ourselves, so much that it hurts and then more.*”⁹

REFERENCES

1. book: Davis, Katie and Clark, Beth: *Kisses from Katie: A Story of Relentless Love and Redemption*. New York: Howard Books, A Division of Simon & Schuster, October 2011 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9781451612097>), ISBN 9781451612066
2. news: Allen, Bonnie: In Uganda, American Becomes Foster Mom To 13 Girls. NPR, July 09 8:00AM 2011 (URL: <http://www.npr.org/2011/07/09/137348637/>)
3. news: Smietana, Bob: At 22, Tennessee woman is mom to 13 Ugandan children. The (Nashville) Tennessean, October 11, 10:56am 2011 (URL: <http://usatoday30.usatoday.com/news/religion/story/2011-10-10/katie-davis-uganda/50723100/1>)
4. web: <https://amazima.org/stories/a-very-personal-update-from-katie>
5. Amazima: <https://amazima.org/>
6. FaceBook: <https://www.facebook.com/KatieinUganda>
7. blog: <http://katiedavis.amazima.org/>
8. twitter: <https://twitter.com/katieinuganda>
9. myspace: <https://myspace.com/kaaatieee/>

IV. DISCUSSION



1. Caroline Bankusha is a **social worker** in Uganda. She said, “To me, I think that's not acceptable. There is no way you can have more than four children.” What do you think? Is 13 children too many?
2. When Katie was 22 years old, she was the mother of 13 children. Caroline said that Katie must be at least 25 years old to care for children. What do you think? Was Katie too young?
3. Katie is only seven years older than her oldest daughter. Caroline says that Katie must be at least 21 years older than the child she cares for. What do you think? Are “Mom” and “daughter” too close in age?

V. PRESENTATION



INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. _____	If I lived in Africa, I would _____. <i>What would you do?</i>
DRAMA:	You start a non-profit organization somewhere. Where is it and what does it do?	

⁹ Davis and Clark (2011): *Kisses from Katie: A Story of Relentless Love and Redemption* page 251

VI. SONG

song title: *I Know Who I Am* (2001) | album: *Only Love Is Spoken Here*

singer: Don Francisco | lyrics: Don Francisco

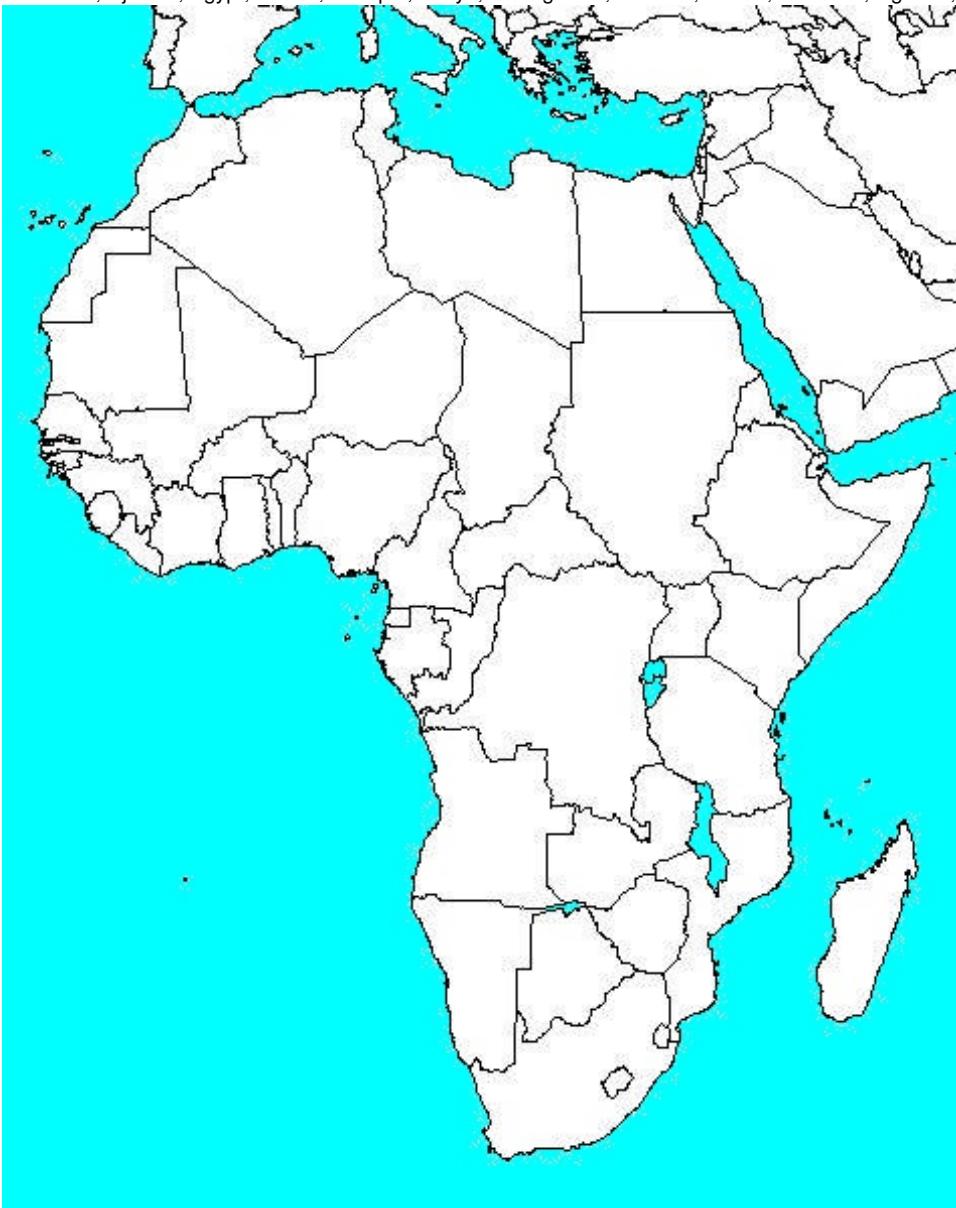
lyrics:
mp3: <http://www.rockymountainministries.org/membersite.html>
video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XcEXvXOdbRQ>

Hints (提示): am, answer, ashamed, earth, end, forever, found, here, I, leave, listens, love, round, safe, true, where, who, why

1. I know _____.
 2. I know _____ I'm _____.
 3. I know _____ I'm _____,
 4. why I'm _____ with you.
 5. I know why the _____ goes _____.
 6. I know _____ the _____ is _____.
 7. I know love's _____.
 8. I know that it's _____.
 9. I know _____ to _____.
 10. I know _____ to _____ Him.
 11. I know that He _____ when I _____ His name.
 12. My soul's _____ within His care.
 13. I know that I can _____ it there
 14. I know in the _____ I won't be _____.
-

VII. GEOGRAPHY

Botswana, Djibouti, Egypt, Eritrea, Ethiopia, Kenya, Madagascar, Somalia, Sudan, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia



 **LESSON 9: I work on a wildlife preserve**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. Africa	(n)	'æfrɪkə	非洲	12. jungle	(n)	'dʒʌŋgl	丛林
2. land	(n)	lænd	土地	13. bush	(n)	bʊʃ	灌木丛
3. hunt	(v)	hʌnt	追猎	14. electric	(adj)	ɪ'læktrɪk	电的
4. hunter	(n)	'hʌntə	猎人	15. volt	(adj)	volt	伏特的
5. shoot	(v)	ʃat	拍摄	16. fence	(n)	fens	篱笆
6. capture	(v)	'kæptʃə	捕获	17. ranger	(n)	'rendzə	护林员
7. escape	(v)	ɛ'skep	逃走	18. elephant	(n)	'eləfənt	大象
8. trust	(v)	trəst	相信	19. herd	(n)	hə:d	象群
9. wildlife	(n)	'waɪldlaɪf	野生生物	20. matriarch	(n)	'metrɪərk	女家长
10. preserve	(n)	pri'zɜ:v	保护区	21. lodge	(n)	lədʒ	旅馆
11. forest	(n)	'fɔ:rist	森林	22. holding pen	(n)	'holdeɪŋ pen	栏
ENGLISH		(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文			
23. trunk	(n)	trʌŋk		大象的鼻子			
24. electric fence	(n)	ɪ'læktrɪk fens		电围栏			
25. hunting grounds	(n)	'hʌntɪŋ graʊndz		狩猎场			
26. wildlife preserve	(n)	'waɪldlaɪf pri'zɜ:v		野生动物保护区			

II. SENTENCES

- He liked to play in the _____ with the other African children.
- He turned the **land** into a _____ where all the animals would be safe.
- They built a _____ in the park.
- The **land** long ago was the _____ of a mighty warrior.
- The _____ of elephants **escaped** from their _____ pen.
- The **holding pen** was surrounded by an 8000 _____ electric _____.
- _____ tried to find and _____ the elephants.
- But the elephants were first found and _____ by **rangers**.
- He tried to gain the elephants' _____.
- The elephant reached her _____ out to him.

III. READING

Lawrence Anthony Lawrence and wife Francoise

Zululand

Lawrence Anthony was born and raised in **Africa**. When he was young, he liked to play in the **bush** with other African children. He didn't do so well in school—in fact he said that he barely made it

through high school. After graduation, he moved to the city and started a real estate company.



King Shaka

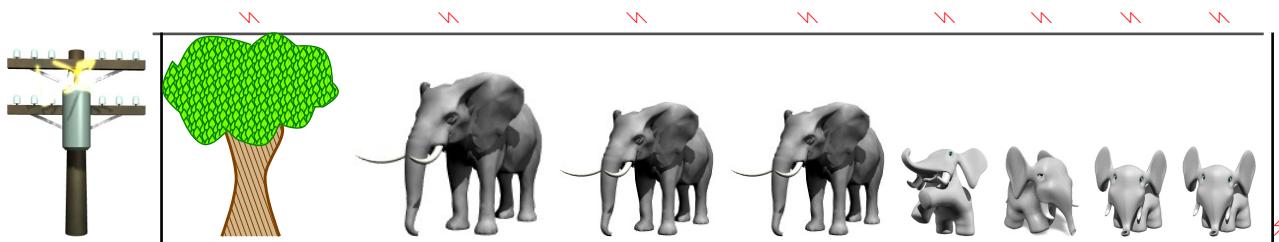
lodge

lodge

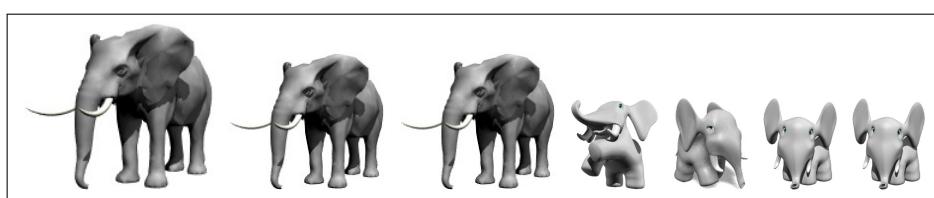
But Lawrence missed the **bush**. In 1998, he bought a huge piece of **land** that long ago was the **hunting grounds** of King Shaka—a mighty Zulu warrior. Lawrence turned this land into a **wild life preserve** and called it “*Thula Thula*”—meaning “peace and tranquility”. Lawrence and his wife Françoise built a **lodge** in Thula Thula. Many guests came there to see its beautiful animals.¹



One day, Lawrence received a telephone call asking if he would take nine “troublesome” elephants. If he would not take them, then they would all be **shot** and killed. Lawrence was afraid, but said, “I’ll take them.”² The elephants arrived, but there were only seven elephants, not nine. The previous owners had **shot** the **matriarch** because she was too “troublesome” ...and they **shot** her baby also. Lawrence called the new **matriarch** “Nana”. The other adult female elephant he called “Frankie”. The elephants hated humans. They hated Lawrence. Frankie especially hated Lawrence. Lawrence felt that if she had the chance, Frankie would kill him.



The elephants were put inside a large **holding pen** until they were ready to be released into the larger **wildlife preserve**. The **holding pen** was encircled with an 8000 **volt electric fence**. There was no way for the elephants to **escape**. But during the night Nana and Frankie had together pushed over a tree onto the **electric fence**, and all the 7 elephants **escaped** the **holding pen**, and soon also **escaped** Thula Thula.³



¹ ref: Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...* page 12
ref: Martin (2012): *New York Times*

² Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...* pages 9–11

³ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...*, pages 31–33, Chapter 4

Hunters tried to find and **shoot** the elephants; but they were first found and **captured** by **rangers** and returned to **holding pen** in Thula Thula. Lawrence decided to try something new. He left his home and lived with the elephants just outside the **fence**. He stayed with them all day. He stayed with them all night. He let the elephants see him. He talked to them. He sang to them. He fed them. He tried to know the elephants and to let the elephants know him. He tried to gain their **trust**. Lawrence told them, “*You will all die if you go. Stay here, I will be here with you and it's a good place*”.⁴



Finally, one day soon after sunrise, Nana and her baby were standing at the **fence** near Lawrence. This time, Nana was not angry. Lawrence walked closer and closer to the **fence**. He got so close that he was only one step from the **fence**. Being this close, Nana could easily grab him with her long **trunk**, pull him through the **electric fence**, and crush him. Lawrence knew this, but yet somehow he “*had never felt safer*”. Nana gently reached her **trunk** out to Lawrence and touched him. Lawrence also reached his hand out and touched the top of her **trunk**. Then Nana slowly pulled her **trunk** back through the **fence**. She looked at Lawrence for a few moments more, and then returned to the others.⁵

Nana no longer hated Lawrence. Nana had come to **trust** him. The next morning, the gate was opened, and Nana led the elephants out of the **holding pen** and down towards the river.⁶



Lawrence and the elephants had become friends. Lawrence became especially good friends with Nana. Sometimes Lawrence would find them in the **bush** and chat with them. One night Lawrence heard a strange noise outside. He picked up his gun and opened the door to find Nana eating the grass from his roof. Lawrence said to her, “*Hey Nana,...What are you doing here, you beautiful girl?*” Nana stretched out her **trunk** and Lawrence stretched out his hand. She stooped down and put her big head in front of the doorway, as if she wanted to come into the house for a visit.⁷

⁴ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...*, pages 61–68, chapter six

⁵ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...* pages 85–86 (chapter nine)

⁶ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...* pages 87–88 (chapter nine)

⁶ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...* pages 149–150 (chapter nineteen)

⁷ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...*, pages 136–138, chapter seventeen



Mom Frankie showed off her baby Ilanga to Lawrence

Sometimes Lawrence left Thula Thula on business. Often when he returned, the elephants would be waiting at his house. Lawrence said, *"It soon became obvious that somehow they knew exactly when I was away and when I was coming back."* Once Lawrence was returning home and was at an airport 650 kilometers away. At this time, the elephants were already on their way to his house in Thula Thula. But Lawrence missed his flight. At exactly the same time as he missed his flight, the elephants suddenly stopped, turned around, and went back into the **bush**.⁸

On March 2, 2012, at 61 years of age, Lawrence died of a heart attack. At this time, the elephants at Thula Thula had not been to Lawrence's house for a year and a half. No one told the elephants that Lawrence had died. But somehow they seemed to know. Soon after his death, two different **herds** of elephants showed up at his house. They had walked 12 hours to get there. And before returning to the **bush**, they stood around the house for two days.⁹



REFERENCES

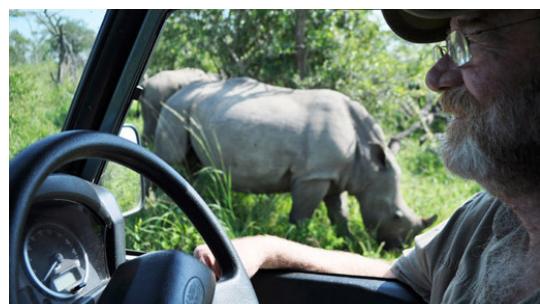
1. book: Anthony, Lawrence and Spence, Graham: *The Elephant Whisperer: Learning about Life, Loyalty and Freedom from a Remarkable Herd of Elephants*. Sidgwick & Jackson, 2009 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0283070870>), ISBN 978-0-283-07087-7
2. newspaper: Martin, Douglas: Lawrence Anthony, Baghdad Zoo Savior, Dies at 61. New York Times, March 11 2012 (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2012/03/12/world/africa/lawrence-anthony-baghdad-zoo-savior-dies-at-61.html>)
3. newspaper: Medley, Laea: Nothing was left unsaid: son. DailyNews, March 05, 10:16am 2012 (URL: <http://www.iol.co.za/dailynews/news/nothing-was-left-unsaid-son-1.1248653>)
4. journal: Bekoff, Marc: Elephants Mourn Loss of "Elephant Whisperer" Lawrence Anthony. Psychology Today, March 07 2012 (URL: <https://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/animal-emotions/201203/elephants-mourn-loss-elephant-whisperer-lawrence-anthony>)
5. Facebook: <http://www.facebook.com/pages/Thula-Thula-Exclusive-Private-Game-Reserve/106135859547>
6. web: UPDATE: Elephants Who Appeared To Mourn Their Human Friend Remain Protected. George Stromboulopoulos Tonight, July 25 2012 (URL: <http://www.cbc.ca/strombo/social-issues/saying-goodbye-elephants-hold-apparent-vigil-to-mourn-their-human-friend.html>)

⁸ ↗ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...*, page 154, chapter nineteen

⁹ image: ↗ (2012)George Stromboulopoulos Tonight

quote: ↗ Anthony and Spence (2009): *The Elephant Whisperer...* page 333 (chapter thirty seven)

ref: ↗ (2012)George Stromboulopoulos Tonight



IV. DISCUSSION

1. Would you rather be a rich real estate agent in the city or be a poor person living in the bush but with many animal friends?
 2. If you owned a big piece of land and someone called you wanting you to take a herd of elephants, would you take them?
 3. Is it right to keep animals in zoos?
 4. If you were the ranger who was almost killed by Frankie, would you give Lawrence another chance?
 5. After the elephants broke out of Thula Thula, would it be wrong for a hunter to shoot them?
 6. If you were a ranger, would there ever be a circumstance in which you would shoot an elephant?
 7. A professor at NCTU in Taiwan once said this to me: “Life is a small cage, and that [pointing to his bicycle] is my freedom.” What do you think about what he said?
 8. Make your own statement: Life is a _____, and _____ is my _____.



V. SONG

song title: *Coyote* (1993) || album: *Goin' Back to Texas*
 singer: Don Edwards || lyrics: Bob McDill

lyrics: <http://www.metrolyrics.com/coyotes-lyrics-richard-thompson.html>
 mp3: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B003A96LMY>
 video: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=BP16-dbIkIu>

Hints: automobile, Comanches, cowboy, coyotes, days, distance, drovers, face, gone, history, lion, longhorns, me, old, outlaws, place, red, roads, see, stars, steel, sun, tale, Way, wild, wolf, young

1. Was a _____ I knew in south Texas
 2. His _____ was burnt deep by the _____
 3. Part _____, part sage, part Mexican
 4. He was there when Pancho Villa was _____
 5. And he'd tell you a _____ of the old _____
 6. When the country was _____ all around _____
 7. Sit out under the _____ of the Milky _____
 8. And listen while the _____ howl _____
- They go, ...
9. Now the _____ are gone
 10. And the _____ are gone
 11. The _____ are gone
 12. And the _____ are gone
 13. Geronimo's _____
 14. And Sam Bass is _____
 15. And the _____ is gone
 16. And the _____ is gone
 17. Well he cursed all the _____ and the oilmen
 18. And he cursed the _____
 19. Said, "This is no _____ for an hombre like I am"
 20. In this new world of asphalt and _____."
 21. Then he'd look off someplace in the _____
 22. At something only he could _____
 23. He'd say, "All that's left now of the _____ : "
 24. Those ******, old _____ and _____."
- And they go, ...

VI. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG

1. In the _____, the _____
 (where?) _____ (adj) _____ (where?)
2. the _____
 (what?) _____ (does what?) _____ (when?)
3. Near the _____, the _____
 (where?) _____ (adj) _____ (where?)
4. the _____
 (what?) _____ (does what?) _____ (when?)
5. _____, don't
 (do what?) _____ (who?) _____ (do what?) _____ (who?)
6. the _____
 (what?) _____ (does what?) _____ (when?)

VII. RIDDLE**A Trip to the Zoo**

Two girls (Anne and Betty) and three boys (Dennis, Ernie and Frank) go on a trip to the zoo. All five children have five different favorite animals that they want to see: monkeys, alligators, bears, lions, and elephants. Each of the five children eats one of five different snacks: popcorn, chips, pretzels, corn chips, or crackers. Each child buys one gift: a toy rabbit, a T-shirt, a cup, a hat, or a toy monkey. Using the clues below, figure out which child likes which animal, eats what snack, and buys which gift.¹⁰ Here are the clues:

1. None of the boys buys a toy animal.
2. One of the girls likes bears the best.
3. The one who likes corn chips also likes monkeys.
4. Anne and Frank both eat chips.
5. Dennis keeps on making lion noises for 3 days after leaving the zoo.
6. The toy monkey gets corn chip crumbs on it from being kissed by its owner.
7. One child's favorite animal is the alligator and their favorite snack is popcorn.
8. The favorite animal of one child is the alligator; that child buys an alligator cup.
9. The child who buys the T-shirt loves it so much that they sleep in it even though it has pretzel crumbs on it.

Anne

Betty

Dennis

Ernie

Frank

alligators

bears

elephants

lions

monkeys

corn chips

crackers

popcorn

potato chips

pretzels

cup

hat

T-shirt

toy monkey

toy rabbit

¹⁰ Adapted from <http://www.braingle.com/brainteasers/22588/a-day-at-the-zoo.html>

LESSON 10: Con Artist

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. banknote	(n)	'bæŋknot	钞票	11. fake	(adj)	fek	假的
2. check	(n)	tʃæk	支票	12. forge	(v)	fɔrdz	伪造
3. identification	(n)	aɪ'dentəfɪ'keɪʃn	身分证	13. forgery	(n)	'fɔrdzəri	伪造物
4. I.D.	(n)	'aɪ'di	身分证	14. fraud	(n)	frəd	诈骗罪
5. uniform	(n)	'junɪfɔrm	制服	15. counterfeit	(adj)	'kaʊntəfɪt	伪造的
6. signature	(n)	'sɪgnətʃər	签名	16. counterfeit	(v)	'kaʊntəfɪt	伪造
7. con	(v)	kan	欺诈	17. counterfeiter	(n)	'kaʊntəfɪtər	伪造者
8. con	(n)	kan	欺诈	18. scam	(n)	'skæm	骗局
9. conman	(n)	'kanmæn	骗子	19. pretend	(v)	prɪ'tend	假装
10. license	(n)	'laɪsns	驾照	20. suspect	(v)	sə'spekt	怀疑

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
21. bank account	(n)	'bænk ə'kaʊnt	银行的帐户
22. credit card	(n)	'krédit kard	信用卡
23. con artist	(n)	kan 'artist	诈骗高手

II. SENTENCES

- He _____ her into buying this old _____ car (破车).
- It was just a clever _____ to get her money.
- The _____ opened a _____ and made thousands of dollars passing bad _____.
- He made millions of dollars _____ banknotes.
- These banknotes are all _____.
- He _____ to be a real pilot, but he had never even been to flight school.
- She _____ his signature and cashed his paycheck.
- She later went to prison for five years for **check** _____.
- She later went to prison for five years for **credit card** _____.
- She showed her _____ I.D. to the guard and walked through the door.
- He put on a **fake** _____ and walked passed the guard and through the door.

III. READING

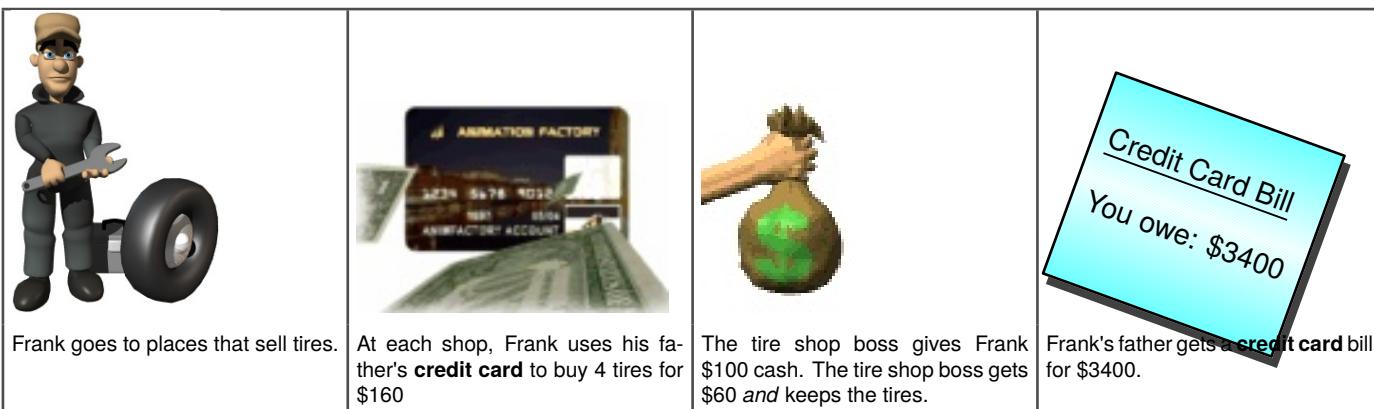
The Con Artist



When Frank Abagnale was 15 years old, he already had his own car. He liked his car. But there was something he liked more. He liked girls. He liked many many girls. He was crazy about girls. He said, "I couldn't get enough of them. I woke up thinking of girls. I went to bed thinking of girls...."¹ Frank was handsome and charming. Many girls liked him too.

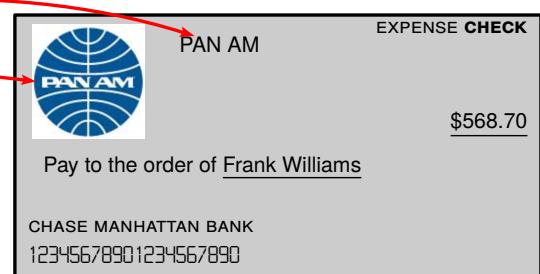
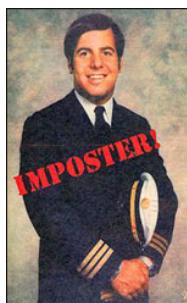


¹ quote:  Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 11
graphics:  (1996–*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4952854, 4954123)



But dating girls required money—more money than he had. And so Frank thought of his first **scam**. He used his fathers **credit card** to get money from all over town. He spent his money on girls. In the end, his father received a **credit card** bill for \$3400. He was very surprised. When he asked Frank about it, Frank told him, “It's the girls, Dad. They do funny things to me. I can't explain it.” Frank thought his dad would be very angry. He wasn't. He nodded like he understood and said, “Don't worry about it, boy.”² And that was that. His father didn't even punish him.

One day in 1964 when Frank was 16 years old, without finishing high school, he got on a train and went to New York. He didn't say good-bye to anyone; he didn't even leave a note. Frank got a job in New York. But he was still dating many girls, and money was not enough. So he started writing **checks**. Soon, his **bank account** had no more money. But he kept on writing **checks** anyways. Soon he was writing two or three bad **checks** a day and cashing them around town. He later simply quit his job and just went around New York cashing bad **checks**.³



fake pilot with real uniform

Frank takes decals from toy Pan Am airplane kits and makes fake Pan Am checks⁴

But Frank was afraid that someday the police would catch him. He thought of a new idea—he would become a **fake** airline pilot! He called Pan Am Airlines, and told them that he was a pilot who had lost his **uniform**. They told him where to go to get a new one. He went there. They gave him a **uniform**. He made a **fake** airline **I.D.** card. He made a **fake** pilot's **license**. Because people thought he was a pilot, he could fly on airplanes for free. He traveled all over the world. He also made **fake** Pan Am **checks**. He used his **fake** Pan Am **checks** to get money from all over the world too. Once while flying in an airplane with 140 people onboard, the pilot offered to let Frank fly the airplane. Frank sat down, turned on the auto-pilot, and with 140 lives in his hands, flew the airplane.⁵

² Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 17

³ reference: Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 25

graphic: (1996-*)*Animation Factory* (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4951985)

⁴ Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can* page 118 (Chapter 6: PAPERHANGER IN A ROLLS-ROYCE)

⁵ story: Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*

image 1: http://www.trutv.com/library/crime/criminal_mind/scams/frank_abagnale/4.html

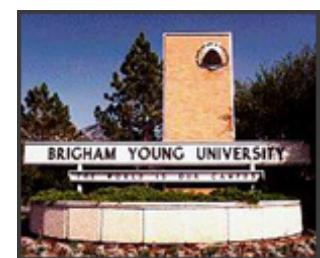
Eventually, Frank knew he needed to try something new. So he rented a very nice apartment in Atlanta. He told the people there that he was a doctor. A nearby hospital needed a doctor for the 12am–8am night shift. The director asked Frank if he would take the job. Frank said yes and so he started working as a **fake** doctor. When some sick person came in, he let the student doctors help the person. The student doctors loved that, and so they really liked Frank. One student doctor told him, “*You don't treat us like the other staff doctors.... You let us go ahead and handle the case. You let us be real doctors.*”⁶



But over time Frank realized being a **fake** doctor might end in someone dying. So he decided to quit being a **fake** doctor and try being a **fake** lawyer. He made a **fake** degree from Harvard Law School. But he still had to pass an exam to be a lawyer. He studied and studied, failed the exam twice, but passed it on the third try. He started working as a **fake** lawyer.⁷



This went on for some time. But later someone who really was from Harvard seemed to begin **suspecting** that Frank was a **fake**. Frank ran away to Utah. He told people at a college (大学) there that he used to teach sociology (社会学). They hired him to teach a sociology class for six weeks. The students loved him. Frank said that after the six weeks, “At least fifty of my students sought me out to tell me how much they had enjoyed my classes and to wish me good-bye and good luck.”⁸



REFERENCES

book: Abagnale, Frank W. and Redding, Stan: *Catch Me If You Can*. Grosset & Dunlap, 1980, ISBN 0-7679-0538-5

IV. DISCUSSION



- Frank had a car when he was _____ years old. Is that too young or is that OK? Why?
- When he was only 15, Frank very much _____ girls. Do you think that helped him or hurt him?
- Frank pretended to be a _____, a _____, and a _____. If you were going to pretend to be something just for fun, what would it be? Why?
- Frank was a high school dropout (退学生), but yet as a **fake** teacher in college, students loved him. How could this be?
- Frank got a lot of money and spent it on _____. If you were 15 and had a lot of money, what would you do with it?

⁶ reference: Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 92

graphics: (1996-*) *Animation Factory* (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4954581)

⁷ story: Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*

⁸ story: Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 115

image: http://www.trutv.com/library/crime/criminal_mind/scams/frank_abagnale/7.html

6. In New York, Frank didn't make much money, partly because he was only 16 years old. So he changed his driver's **license** to make him look like he was 26 years old. What change do you think he made? Answer: He changed his 1948 _____ on his **license** to

⁹

7. For Frank's first **scam**, he used his father's _____. Frank knew an owner of a gas station who sold car tires. Frank told him his idea. The owner agreed. Frank used his father's **credit card** to buy a set of new tires for \$160; but instead of taking the tires, Frank let the owner keep the tires, instead gave Frank \$100 cash. Now Frank had \$100, the owner would get \$160 from the **credit card** company, and the owner still had the tires to sell to someone else. He did this type of **scam** all over town.¹⁰ How would this help Frank get money? Would it also help the people selling car tires to make money? How?

8. What if you owned a gas station and someone came offering the same car tire **scam** that Frank did? What would you say? What would you do?

9. Because of Frank's **credit card** fraud, Frank's dad got a bill for _____. Frank's dad _____ angry. He _____ Frank. Why did his father react (反应) like that?
was/wasn't punished/didn't punish
 Would Frank's life be different if his father had reacted differently? How? Why?

10. If Frank were your son and you got the bill for \$3400, what would you have done?

11. To make **fake** Pan Am **checks**, Frank bought Pan Am model airplane kits. What do you think Frank did with these kits to help make his **fake checks**?¹¹ Answer: Frank used the Pan Am from the kits and put them on the _____.

V. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. Someday I would like to be _____ because _____ <u>why?</u>
DRAMA:	Your friend decides to be a fake _____. What does he/she do? What do you do?

⁹ Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 23

¹⁰ Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 17

¹¹ Abagnale and Redding (1980): *Catch Me If You Can*, page 17

VI. SONG

song title:	<i>Reason to Believe</i> (1971)	album:	<i>Every Picture Tells a Story</i>
singer:	Rod Stewart	lyrics:	Dallas Dausten, Lionel Richie, Tony Reyes
lyrics:	http://www.elyrics.net/read/r/rod-stewart-lyrics/reason-to-believe-lyrics.html		
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/Find-Reason-Believe/dp/B000V6AA0I/		
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XJylcQ7CGfI		

Hints: believe, change, faced, give, hard, lied, listened, mind, past, reason, straight, think, true, without

1. If I _____ long enough to you.
 2. I'd find a way to _____ that it's all _____
 3. Knowing that you _____, _____ -faced while I cried
 4. Still I look to find a _____ to believe
 5. Someone like you makes it _____ to live _____ somebody else
 6. Someone like you makes it easy to _____, never _____ about myself
 7. If I gave you time to _____ my _____
 8. I'd try to leave all the _____ behind
 9. Knowing that you _____ straight-_____ while I cried
 10. Still I look to find a _____ to _____
- ...



LESSON 11: Forgiveness

I. PROVERB

To err is human; to forgive divine.



To _____ is human (人类的), to _____ is
 What do all people do?
 super-human.
 What is super-human?

II. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. forgive	(v)	fə'giv	原谅	11. missionary	(n)	'mɪʃənəri	传教士
2. forgiveness	(n)	fə'gɪvnɪs	宽恕	12. pilot	(n)	'paɪlət	飞行员
3. forget	(v)	fə'get	忘记	13. pastor	(n)	'pæstər	牧师
4. revenge	(n)	rɪ'vendz	报仇	14. jungle	(n)	'dʒʌŋgl	丛林
5. retaliate	(v)	rɪ'tæli,eɪt	报仇	15. airplane	(n)	'er,plen	飞机
6. retaliation	(n)	rɪ'tæli'eʃən	报复	16. gift	(n)	gɪft	礼品
7. violent	(adj)	'vaɪələnt	兇暴的	17. spear	(n)	spɪər	矛
8. annoy	(v)	ə'nɔɪ	惹恼	18. machete	(n)	ma'tʃete	开山刀
9. ignore	(v)	ɪg'nor	不理	19. peace	(n)	pis	平安
10. kill	(v)	kɪl	杀	20. transgression	(n)	træns'greʃən	犯罪

III. QUOTE

"For if you forgive others for their transgressions, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. But if you do not forgive others, then your Father will not forgive your transgressions."

— Jesus ²

IV. SENTENCES

1. Please _____ me.
2. Forgive and _____.
3. They killed him out of _____.
4. Everytime the girls laughed at them, the boys felt they needed to _____.
5. Forgiveness is better than _____.
6. They were a very _____ people.
7. You can cut down bamboo with a _____.
8. They hunted animals in the _____ with _____.
9. Yes you have an _____, but are you a _____?
10. When she did things he didn't like, he tried to _____ it.

¹ translation: adapted from Dr. Eye for Windows 95/98/NT/2000/ME/XP

image: (1996-*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4938384)

²The Bible, NAS, Matthew 6:14–15

V. GEOGRAPHY



Label each of these countries on the map to the right:

1. Argentina
2. Bolivia
3. Brazil
4. Chile
5. Columbia
6. Ecuador
7. French Guiana
8. Guyana
9. Paraguay
10. Peru
11. Suriname
12. Uruguay
13. Venezuela

VI. READING



Murder and Forgiveness in the Jungle

The Waodani are a tribe (部落) that lives in the jungle (丛林) in Ecuador. They were a very **violent** people. They killed any outsiders who came there. They even often killed each other. There was no law there, and no police. They basically only had four rules.³

1. “If someone does something you don't like, **ignore** it.”
2. “If you can't **ignore** it, **kill** the person.”
3. If someone **kills** someone in your family, you must **kill** someone in that person's family.
4. It is best to **kill** everyone you can in that family so they can't come back and **kill** people in your family.

Sometimes they would even kill young children. And women helped in the killings.⁴

³ Saint (2005): *End of the Spear*, page 83

⁴ Boster, Yost and Peeke: *Ethos*



Nate Saint



Jim Elliot



Ed McCully



Peter Fleming



Roger Youderin

Nate Saint was from America. In 1956, he worked as a **missionary** and **pilot** in **Ecuador**. He and four other American missionary men decided to try to make friends with the Waodani people, and show them God's love and God's way of living.



The **missionaries** used an **airplane** to search for them. After searching for a long time, they found them. Then for several more weeks, they gave **gifts** to the Waodani people by lowering the **gifts** with a rope from the airplane.

Eventually they landed their airplane next to a river not far from the Waodani village. On Friday January 6th, a man, a woman, and a girl stepped out of the jungle to meet them. They gave the man a ride in the airplane. They showed them rubber bands (橡皮筋), balloons, and a yo-yo. They also gave them lemonade to drink and hamburgers to eat.

The next day, Saturday, no one came. Then on Sunday afternoon, Waodani visitors came again. But this visit was not a friendly one. They killed all five missionaries with **spears** and **machetes**.

All of the missionaries killed that day were married and four of them had small children. Their wives and children were also in Ecuador.

The Waodani thought other outsiders would come to kill them out of **retaliation**. But that is not what happened. The families **forgave** the Waodanis. Other missionaries **forgave** the Waodanis. They continued to give gifts by airplane. It was as if they were saying, "Even though you **kill** us, we **forgive** you and still want to be friends with you."

Nate Saint had a sister named Rachel. Rachael forgave the Waodanis. She spent two years learning their language. In 1958, she went to go live with them. They did not kill her. She lived with them for the rest of her life. Rachael taught them about Jesus. They changed completely. They stopped killing outsiders. They stopped killing each other.

Mincayani is the Waodani man who is thought to have killed Rachael's brother, Nate. Mincayani later became a **pastor**. He said, "We acted badly, badly, until they brought us God's carvings (雕刻物). Then, seeing His carvings and following His good trail, now we live happily and in **peace**."⁵



⁵ Saint (2005): *End of the Spear* page 80

Nate Saint also had a son named Steve. Steve was only five years old when his father was killed. Steve also forgave the Waodani's for killing his father. Steve returned to the U.S., got married, and had children of his own. After his children had grown up, Rachael died of cancer. The Waodani asked Steve to stay there with them. He said yes and he and his family moved to Ecuador. They lived with Mincayani, the same man who probably killed Steve's father. Today Steve and Mincayani are good friends, and Mincayani has even become "grandfather" to Steve's children.



REFERENCES

1. book: Saint, Steve: *End of the Spear*. Tyndale House Publishers, December 5 2005 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0842364390>), ISBN 0842364390
2. book: Elliot, Elisabeth: *Through Gates of Splendor: The Event That Shocked the World, Changed a People, and Inspired a Nation*. Hendrickson Publishers, 2010, Hendrickson Classic Biographies (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1598564692>), ISBN 1598564692
3. film: Ewing, Bill, Gavigan, Bart and Hanon, Jim: *End of the Spear*. 2006
4. film: Hanon, Jim: *Beyond the Gates of Splendor*. 2004
5. article: Boster, James S., Yost, James and Peeke, Catherine: Rage, Revenge, and Religion: Honest Signaling of Aggression and Nonaggression in Waorani Coalitional Violence. *Ethos*, 31 December, Nr. 4 (URL: <http://cognition.clas.uconn.edu/~jboster/research/warfare/rrr.pdf>)

VII. DISCUSSION



1. How could you make friends with **violent** people like the Waodanis?
2. What gifts would you have given to the Waodanis?
3. How would you give them these gifts without getting killed?
4. If your family member would have been killed by people like the Waodani, would you be able to forgive?
5. If you knew you could really help them, would you go live with them?
6. Why do you think the Waodani killed the five missionaries?
7. The Waodani killed them because they had somehow come to believe that the missionaries were cannibals.⁶ Why might they have thought that?
8. A Waodani girl named Dawa said that after the killings of the five missionaries, she saw foreigners floating above the trees singing. She later said, "They were all dressed in the same *weicoo* (cloth)." All the Waodani attackers said they saw "something" that day that there was chanting. Mincayani and one other said that "it looked like lights floating above the trees". What do you think they saw and heard?⁷
9. Before the missionaries came, if someone did bad things, that person would be killed. But Steve Saint said that after the Waodani gave up killing, a new problem came up. Now there was no way to deal with people who did bad things. There are no police or jails there. So what should be done with people who do bad things?⁸

⁶ Elliot (1981): *Through Gates of Splendor*, page 258

⁷ Saint (2005): *End of the Spear* pages 334–337

Cobb (2002): *A Dialogue With God* page 83

⁸ Saint (2005): *End of the Spear*, page 84

VIII. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____ . I _____ forgive my friend if _____ he/she because _____ will/will not _____ forgive me If he/she does what? Why? if I _____ because _____ . If you do what? Why?
DRAMA:	You discover that some penguins are living in your refrigerator. They are very violent, but you want to make friends with them. What do you do?

IX. SONG

song title: *Baby Can I Hold You Tonight* (1988) | album: *Tracy Chapman*
singer: Tracy Chapman | lyrics: Tracy Chapman

lyrics: <http://www.mp3-download-lyrics.com/music/Tracy-Chapman/>
mp3: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B0011Z75H4>
video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zlkftyHSf6sQ>

Hints: can, easily, forgive, say, sorry, still, words, years, you

1. " _____ , is all that _____ ."
2. _____ gone by and still _____ don't come _____ ,
3. like " _____ , like " _____ ."
4. " _____ , is all that you can _____ ."
5. _____ gone by and still _____ don't come _____ ,
6. like " _____ me", " _____ me". ...

X. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG

1. _____ is all that you can _____ .
What? _____ can do what?
2. _____ gone by and still _____ don't come easily,
What has gone by? _____ What doesn't come?
3. like _____ , like _____ .
like what? _____ Like what?

XI. LATERAL THINKING PUZZLE

Order these and solve the puzzle:

- A. They are very violent.
1/2/.../9
- B. A man is in the jungle.
1/2/.../9
- C. They want to kill the man.
1/2/.../9
- D. He is captured by a tribe.
1/2/.../9
- E. The chief is forced to let him go free.
1/2/.../9
- F. If the sentence is false, he will be fed to lions.
7
1/2/.../9
- G. The man says, "I will be _____ ."
1/2/.../9
- H. If the sentence is true, he will be thrown off a mountain.
1/2/.../9
- I. The chief lets the man choose how he will die by saying one sentence.
5
1/2/.../9

9

⁹ reference:  Sloane (1992): *Lateral Thinking Puzzlers* page 16 (2.9 The Single Statement)

 **LESSON 12: I Want to be a Superhero**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. hero	(n)	'hɪro	英雄	12. martial arts	(n)	'marʃəl arts	武术
2. heroine	(n)	'hɪroɪn	女英雄	13. amateur	(adj)	'æmət̬r	业余的
3. superhero	(n)	'supeɪ̯hɪro	超级英雄	14. professional	(adj)	prə'feʃnəl	职业的
4. mutual	(adj)	'mjuʊtʃuəl	相互的	15. record	(n)	'rekɔ:d	记录
5. combat	(n)	'kambæt	战斗	16. video	(n)	'vɪdi:o	影片
6. fight	(v)	fait	打架	17. arrest	(v)	ə'rest	逮捕
7. defend	(v)	dɪ'fend	捍卫	18. suit	(n)	sut	制服
8. legal	(adj)	'lɪgəl	合法的	19. stab	(v)	stæb	刺
9. illegal	(adj)	ɪ'lɪgəl	非法的	20. shot	(v)	ʃat	射击
10. police	(n)	pə'lɪs	警察	21. bullet proof	(adj)	'bulɪt pruf	防弹的
11. skill	(n)	'skil	技术	22. stab proof	(adj)	stæb pruf	防刺的

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
23. metropolitan area	(n)	,mɛtrə'paletən ərɪə	都市区
24. mixed martial arts	(n)	mɪkst 'marʃəl arts	混合武术
25. traffic camera	(n)	træfɪk 'cæmərə	交通摄像头
26. break into	(v)	brek 'ɪntu	闯入
27. ski mask	(n)	ski mæsk	滑雪面具

II. SENTENCES

- The two men _____ each other right in front of _____.
- She used her phone to make a _____ of the **fight**.
- He watched 70 hours of **video** from _____.
- The thief was _____ her car.
- The **police** came and _____ the thief.
- The **police** officer wore a vest that was _____ and **stab proof**.
- He was an _____ **martial arts** fighter and so didn't get payed for fighting.
- Because of her special _____, she became a **superhero**.
- It is _____ to steal a car.
- His _____ is 15 wins and 2 losses.

III. READING**A Real Life Superhero in Seattle**

Ben Fodor lives in the city of Seattle. It is home to Microsoft and Amazon.com. The Seattle **metropolitan area** is huge—about 3.6 million people live there.



Ben Fodor



Mutual combat right in front of **police** in Seattle, Washington. 2012 November

Seattle is in the U.S. state of Washington. Washington is special because it is a “**mutual combat** state”—meaning it is **legal** for two people to **fight** each other, even right in front of **police**.

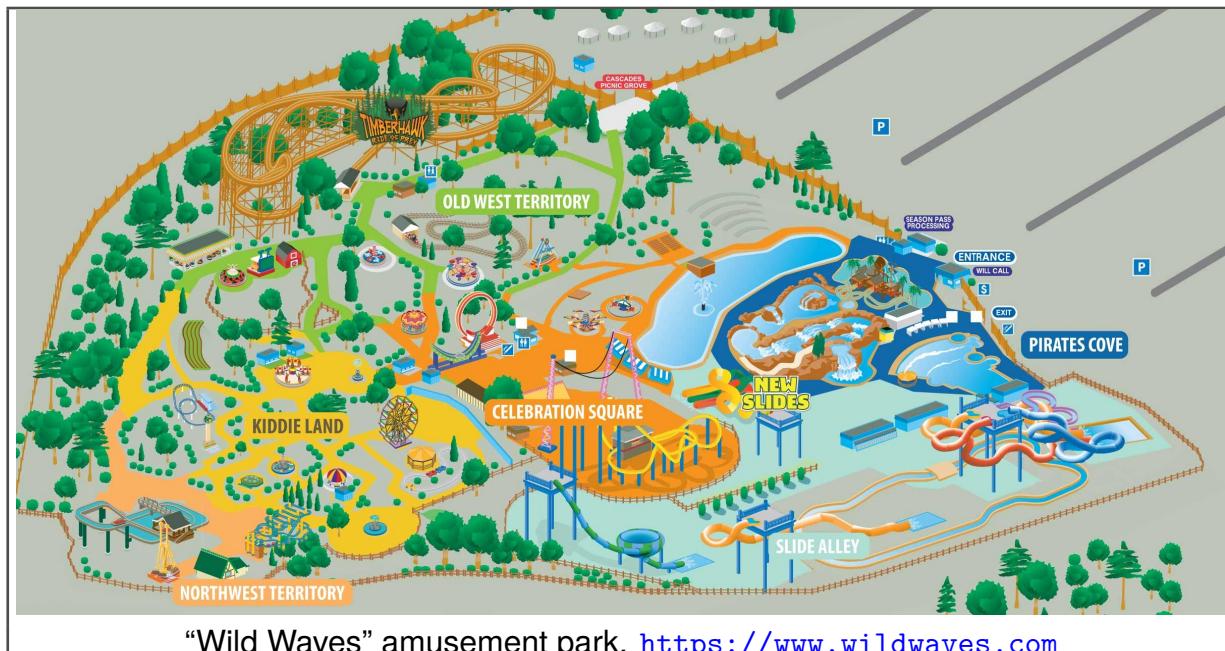


AX Fighting Championships #20 “March Madness”. 2008 March 8. Lynnwood, Washington

Ben has a **special skill**—he is a **mixed martial arts** fighter. **Mixed martial arts** is a combination of several different **martial arts**.

¹Seattle from Queen Anne Hill. <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seattle>. Uploaded 2007 February 22. public domain.

	result	date	age	method	rounds	time
1.	win	2006 December 09	18 years old	technical knock out (punches)	2	
2.	win	2007 April 28	18 years old	submission (rear-naked choke)	1	2:01
3.	win	2007 June 30	19 years old	decision (split)	3	3:00
4.	win	2007 September 22	19 years old	knock out (punch)	3	2:23
5.	win	2007 October 06	19 years old	knock out (punch)	1	0:12
6.	win	2007 December 08	19 years old	decision (unanimous)	3	3:00
7.	win	2008 March 08	19 years old	decision (unanimous)	5	3:00
8.	loss	2008 December 06	20 years old	decision (unanimous)	3	3:00
9.	win	2009 January 24	20 years old	decision (unanimous)	3	3:00
10.	win	2009 April 25	20 years old	technical knockout (punches)	3	2:55
11.	win	2009 August 08	21 years old	submission (leg scissor choke)	1	2:55
12.	win	2009 September 16	21 years old	submission (omoplata)	2	
13.	win	2010 March 30	21 years old	submission (choke hold)	2	2:22
14.	win	2010 June 05	22 years old	technical knockout, rib injury	1	1:10
15.	loss	2010 June 19	22 years old	unanimous decision	5	5:00
16.	win	2010 July 31	22 years old	technical knockout, leg kicks	2	1:09
17.	win	2010 September 08	22 years old	knock out, punches	1	0:48

Table 1.15: Ben Fodor's **amateur** fight record <http://www.sherdog.com/fighter/Ben-Fodor-45446>“Wild Waves” amusement park. <https://www.wildwaves.com>

One night in the summer of 2010, Ben was out with his young son at a water park called “Wild Waves”. They were running to their car when Ben’s son fell, cut his leg on some glass, and now blood was gushing out. Someone had broken their car window and several other car windows as well.³ A man came running up with a cell phone, but wouldn’t call for help because he was using his phone to make a **video** of the whole thing. Eventually Ben and his son were taken to the hospital. But the **police** never came.

³ Helwani (2015): *The MMA Hour 273 [2015]*



"Wild Waves" amusement park from the air⁴

Ben was angry. He said, "There can't just be people doing bad things and getting away with it... If a good person sees someone doing something bad and does nothing about it, then we're just as bad."⁵ Ben decided to do something about it. Ben watched about 70 hours of **video** from **traffic cameras** and found a **video** of a man **breaking into** his car. Then for the next few weekends, he and his friends went to the same parking lot and waited. Eventually the man returned and was **breaking into** another car. Ben put on a **ski mask** and **chased** him through the parking lot. He **chased** him through the forest. Ben **caught** him, and had a long talk with him telling him that he shouldn't do that.

Another time, Ben was out breakdancing with his friends. A man there hit Ben's friend in the head with a stick. Ben **chased** the man and **caught** him. There was a **fight**. The **police** came and **arrested** them both, but later let Ben go. Ben gave the **police** a fake name: he told them his name was "Phoenix Jones". The next day the newspaper said, "**Superhero Defends People Outside Nightclub**".⁶



⁴ https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Wild_Waves_Theme_Park_-_Federal_Way_WA.jpg under Creative Commons Attribution 2.0 Generic license. Originally posted to Flickr: <https://www.flickr.com/photos/97844767@N00/3257965658>

⁵ in Seattle (2015): *Sabrina in Seattle: Episode 14 with Phoenix Jones & the Rain City Superhero Movement*

⁶ quote: Helwani (2015): *The MMA Hour 273 [2015]* (1:32:46+11:50=1:44:36)

graphic: modified from (1996-*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4955012)



Ben Fodor becomes real life superhero "Phoenix Jones"

After that, Ben told himself, "Yeah, that's it. I'm a **superhero**."⁷ He decided that he wanted to "make the world a better place". Using the name "Phoenix Jones, night after night he started wearing a **superhero suit**, and going out on the streets of Seattle looking for trouble.

And he often found trouble. Phoenix Jones has been hit with a baseball bat, **stabbed** twice, and even **shot** once. But none of this stops Phoenix Jones. He says that he has helped with 28 **arrests**.



Phoenix Jones saved my life in a bar fight



D3O material



body armor



bullet proof vest

Phoenix Jones wears a very special **suit**. The suit weighs about 20 kilograms and is worth about US\$10,000.⁸ The outside of his suit is made of something called "D3O". D3O is a special material that the harder you hit it, the harder it becomes. Under that is a vest that is **bullet proof** and **stab proof**. And under that he wears a suit worn by race car drivers that stops fire.

His children loved what he was doing. If they ask why he does it, he answers, "*It's the only thing that Daddy can think of to make the world better.*"

REFERENCES

1. interview: [Helwani, Ariel: Episode 273. The MMA Hour, 273 March 16, 5:00pm CUT – 8:30pm CUT 2015 \(URL: https://soundcloud.com/the-mma-hour/the-mma-hour-episode-273\)](https://soundcloud.com/the-mma-hour/the-mma-hour-episode-273)

⁷ [Helwani \(2015\): The MMA Hour 273 \[2015\]](#)

⁸ [Helwani \(2015\): The MMA Hour 273 \[2015\]](#)

2. interview: Goldstein, Ken: Unmasked: The Detailed Account of Phoenix Jones. 2011 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=60h12WV2HV4>)
 3. interview: Seattle, Sabrina in: *Sabrina in Seattle: Episode 14 with Phoenix Jones & the Rain City Superhero Movement*. May 4 2015 (URL: <https://soundcloud.com/criticalsun/sabrina-in-seattle-episode-14-with-phoenix-jones-the-rain-city-superhero-movement>)
 5. docu.: Arruda, Danny: Phoenix Rising. Sports Center, 2015 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=L5iKjVZbEUI>)
 4. newspaper: Fowlkes, Ben: Real-life crimefighter 'Phoenix Jones' returns to MMA. USA Today, April 8, 6:38pm EDT 2015 (URL: <http://www.usatoday.com/story/sports/mma/2015/04/08/ben-fodor-real-life-crimefighter-phoenix-jones--wsof/25477467/>)
 6. FaceBook: <https://www.facebook.com/phoenixjonesseattle>
 7. channel: <https://www.youtube.com/user/ThePhoenixJones>
 8. web: http://www.d3o.com/d3o_products/plain-and-mesh-sheet/#

IV. DISCUSSION

1. Is what Phoenix Jones does good or bad?
2. Would you want to do what Phoenix Jones does?
3. If you were Phoenix Jones, what would you bring with you?

V. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____ . My favorite superhero is _____ because _____ . why?
DRAMA:	You and your friends are a group of superheroes . What powers do you have? What happens?



VI. SONG

song title: *Superman (It's Not Easy)* (2000) | album: *America Town*
singer: Five for Fighting | lyrics: John Ondrasik

lyrics: <http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/fiveforfighting/supermanitsnoteeasy.html>
mp3: <http://www.amazon.com/gp/product/B0045EDW5M>
video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8pucfyYUIy8>

Hints (提示): absurd , away, better , crazy , disturbed, dream, easy , find, heroes, inside ,
可笑的 更好 发疯 简单 里面

knees , lie , naive , red
膝盖 撒谎 轻信的



1. I can't stand to _____
 2. I'm not that _____
 3. I'm just out to _____
 4. The _____ part of me

 5. I'm more than a _____ : I'm more than a _____
 6. More than some pretty face beside a _____
 7. It's not _____ to be me

 8. Wish that I could _____
 9. Fall upon my _____
 10. Find a way to _____
 11. About a _____ I'll never see

 12. It may sound _____ : but don't be naive
 13. Even _____ have the right to bleed
 14. I may be _____ : but won't you concede
 15. Even Heroes have the right to _____
 16. It's not _____ to be me

 17. Up, up and _____ : away from me
 18. It's all right: You can all _____ sound ton
 19. I'm not _____ : or anything:

 20. I can't stand to _____
 21. I'm not that _____
 22. Men weren't meant to _____
 23. With _____ between their knees
 24. I'm only a man in a silly _____ sheet
 25. Digging for kryptonite on this one way _____
 26. Only a man in a funny _____ sheet
 27. Looking for special things _____ of me
 28. It's not _____ to be me.

images. (1996–*) *Animation Factory* (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

VII. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG

1. I can't stand to _____.
2. I'm not that _____.
3. I'm just out to find _____.
4. I'm more than a _____: I'm more than a _____.
5. More than some _____ beside a _____.
6. It's not _____ to be _____.

LESSON 13: If You Love Someone

I. PROVERB

Love is blind.



1

Love is _____ because when you love someone you

[What is it like?](#)

[What do you do?](#)

II. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. love	(n)	lʌv	爱情	11. marriage	(n)	'mærɪdʒ	婚姻
2. love	(v)	lʌv	爱	12. married	(adj)	'mærɪd	已婚的
3. lust	(n)	lʌst	性慾	13. unrequited	(adj)	,ʌnri'kwaɪtɪd	无报答的
4. like	(v)	laɪk	喜欢	14. boyfriend	(n)	'boɪ,frend	男朋友
5. blind	(adj)	blaɪnd	盲目的	15. girlfriend	(n)	'gɜːl,frend	女朋友
6. feel	(v)	fiːl	感觉	16. couple	(n)	'kʌpl	夫妻
7. feeling	(n)	'fiːlɪŋ	感觉	17. fiancee	(n)	fɪən'se	未婚妻
8. date	(v/n)	dɛt	约会	18. fiance	(n)	fɪən'se	未婚夫
9. engaged	(adj)	ɪn'gedzɪd	订婚的	19. wedding	(n)	'wedɪŋ	婚礼
10. marry	(v)	'aɛrɪ	结婚	20. beloved	(adj)	bɪ'lʌvɪd	心爱的

III. SENTENCES

- She always wanted a big _____.
- They went on a _____ date together.
- My wife and I have been _____ for five years.
- He called to ask her out on a _____.
- "Love can always wait to g ____ ; Lust can never wait to g ____."²
- Sadly, her love for him was to be _____ love.
- Her dad told her she was not allowed to have a _____ until she was 30 years old.

¹ translation: <http://zh.wikiquote.org/zh/%E8%8B%B1%E8%AF%AD%E8%B0%9A%E8%AF%AD>

image:  (1996-*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4938384)

²Pastor Clayton Nuttal, circa 1982

IV. WHAT'S UP? |||||

Look at the picture to the right.³

What is happening?

V. READING |||||**If you Love a Woman, Build Her a Castle**

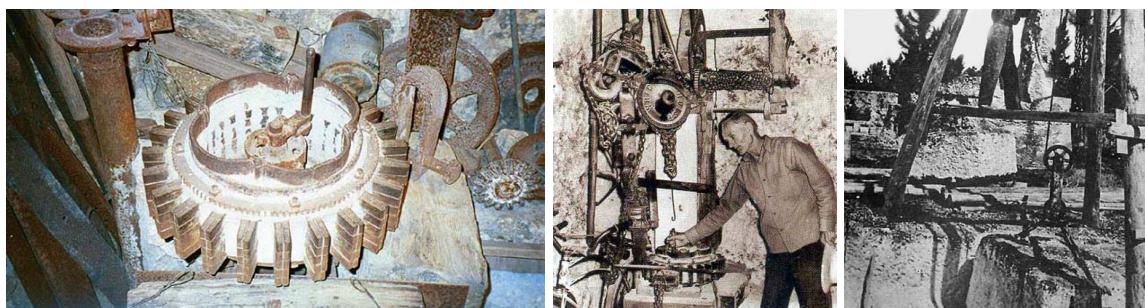
Edward Leedskalnin was from Latvia (拉脱维亚). It was a beautiful place full of simple villages, grassy fields, farm animals, and castles built of stone. Some say that he only went to school up to the fourth grade. But he learned a very special skill from his father, uncles, and brothers—he learned to cut stone.

As a man, Edward was very small—he was only about 152 centimeters tall and weighed about 45 kilograms. He fell in love with a girl named Agnes Scuffs. She was ten years younger than him. When he was 26 years old and she was 16, Edward asked to marry her and she said yes. The day of the wedding came. They both were standing in the church. But when the priest asked Agnes if she wanted to marry Edward, instead of saying, “I do”, she turned away and left Edward there alone.

Edward was heartbroken and embarrassed. People laughed at him. Shortly after that in 1912, Edward left Latvia. Although he could speak little English, he went to the United States. He became a loner with no close friends or family. For the next ten years, he lived in several places in the United States and Canada.

But some say that he did not forget about his beloved Agnes and that he still hoped that someday she would come back to him. Edward purchased land in Florida (佛罗里达州) and started building. But he didn't just build a house—he built an entire castle (城堡).

³ *Jacob Meets Rachael* by Raphael (1518–1519). Source of image: <http://www.wga.hu/art/r/raphael/5roma/4/3jacob.jpg>



The castle that he built is one of the greatest mysteries in the world. He somehow managed to build a castle out of about 1100 tons (吨) of coral (珊瑚) rock. And he did this alone using no power machines and no power tools. Many of the tools he used he made himself out of old car parts. Some of the stones he used weighed as much as 30 tons and were 40 feet high. But yet Edward, working all alone, somehow was able to pull these stones out of the ground, cut them, move them to the castle site, and set them in place. The stones were so perfectly cut and so perfectly set in place that he did not need any cement between them.



Edward didn't build just walls, but also from huge pieces of stone he carved tables, chairs, moons, and planets. There are rocking chairs that weigh 1 ton, but yet can still rock back and forth. One of the gates weighs 9 tons, but yet a person could move it with one finger.

Edward worked on his castle for 28 years. And even after all that, he spent another 3 years moving the castle to a new location. To do this, he hired a truck and a driver. This required many trips. But each time was the same. The driver would park the truck and go home. Then that night, Edward would alone load the huge stones onto the truck. The next day the driver would take the stones to the new location. Edward would then send the driver away to do something; and when the driver returned, the stones would have been taken off the truck. This happened over and over again until all the stones had been moved.⁴

How he did all this, nobody knows. Some have said that Edward put his hands on the stones and "sang" to them.⁵ Edward himself said that, "I have discovered the secrets of the pyramids." Edward did not allow anyone to watch him work. He worked secretly at night, from midnight until six in the morning. His only lights were from the moon and a lantern. Some people tried to sneak up and see what he was doing. But Edward would sense they were there and immediately stop working.

Edward himself lived inside the stone castle he had built. There was no electricity there, no refrigerator, and no running water. He had a small bed, a wooden table, a wooden chair, and a place to keep food. He never married. He was often seen in the public library. He ate fish and crackers.

One day in 1951, Edward checked into a hospital. It was discovered that he had stomach cancer. He

⁴ Knight-Jadczyk (2005): *The Secret History of the World and How to Get Out Alive*, page 275

⁵ Knight-Jadczyk (2005): *The Secret History of the World and How to Get Out Alive*, page 275

died three days later.

What about Agnes? It has been said that in 1980 when she was 83 years old, she was found and asked if she would like to go see coral castle. Agnes refused saying that she did not want to marry him then, and she didn't want to know about him now.⁶

REFERENCES

1. book: McClure, Rusty and Heffron, Jack: *Coral Castle: The story of Ed Leedskalnin and his American Stonehenge*. Ternary Publishing LLC, 2009 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN098421321X>), ISBN 9780984213214
 2. book: Knight-Jadczyk, Laura: *The Secret History of the World and How to Get Out Alive*. 3rd edition. Red Pill Press, Ltd, 2005, ISBN 9781897244166
 3. video: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KhzC_8-kszA
 4. video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=j-93krRXAaY>
 5. video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T2m3COhnzcU>
 6. web: <http://www.labyrinthina.com/coral.htm>
 7. web: <http://paranormal.about.com/od/moremadscience/a/coral-castle-secrets.htm>

VI. PRESENTATION



INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____ . If I wanted to show that I really loved someone I would _____ What would you do?
DRAMA:	Someone really loves you. They build something for you. What do they build? What do you and your friends do?

VII. SONG



song title:	<i>When a Man Loves a Woman</i> (1966)	album:	<i>When a Man Loves a Woman</i>
singer:	Percy Sledge	lyrics:	Percy Sledge
lyrics:	http://www.stlyrics.com/lyrics/thebigchill/whenamanlovesawoman.htm		
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/dp/B000S3I570		
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=vQh112HQsoE		

Hints: back, bad, be, comfort, dime, do, down, give, good, found, hold, keep, last, loves, mind, on, ought, put, rain, sleep, spend, turn, wrong

1. When a man _____ a woman
 2. Can't _____ his _____ on nothing else
 3. He'll trade the _____ for the good thing he's _____
 4. If she's _____ he can't see it.
 5. She can _____ no _____.
 6. _____ his _____ on his best friend
 7. if he _____ her _____
 8. When a man _____ a woman
 9. _____ his very _____
 10. Tryin' to _____ to what he needs
 11. He'd _____ all his _____
 12. _____ in the rain
 13. If she said that's the way it _____ to _____

VIII. TRANSLATION



⁶ www.agilitynut.com/h/coralcastle.html

1. When a man loves a woman,
A/.../J
2. He can't keep his mind on nothing else.
A/.../J
3. He'll trade the world for the good thing
A/.../J he's found.
4. If she's bad he can't see it.
A/.../J
5. She can do no wrong.
A/.../J
6. He'll turn his back on his best friend if
A/.../J he put her down.
7. He'll spend his very last dime trying to
A/.../J hold on to what he needs.
8. He would give up all his comfort.
A/.../J
9. He would sleep out in the rain.
A/.../J
10. if she said that's the way it ought to be.
A/.../J

- A. 他会用全世界来交换他找到的好东西。
- B. 他无法专心做任何事。
- C. 当男人爱上女人，
- D. 他会放弃所有的享乐。
- E. 他会睡在大雨中。
- F. 她所做的都是对的。
- G. 如果她很坏，他看不见。
- H. 如果他最好的朋友批评她，
他(男人)会背弃他(朋友)。
- I. 他会花光最后一毛钱努力维持他的需要。
- J. 只要她说那是必要的。

Reference⁷**IX. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG**

1. When a _____ loves a _____
man/woman _____ What does he love?
2. _____ can't _____
He/She _____ What can't they do?
3. He'll trade the _____ for the _____ he's found
What will he/she trade? _____ What has he/she found?
4. If _____ is _____ he/she
What? _____ can't _____
5. _____ can _____
6. _____ on his _____
7. if _____

⁷ Chinese translation adapted from: <http://tw.myblog.yahoo.com/simonjeng/article?mid=9406&prev=9408&next=9405&l=d&fid=48>, Chun-Hua Tso, [Dr. Eye for Windows 95/98/NT/2000/ME/XP](#)

LESSON 14: Let's Make a Movie

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. Hollywood	(n)	'holi, wʊd	好莱坞	10. script	(n)	skript	剧本
2. movie	(n)	'muvi	电影	11. novel	(n)	'navl	小说
3. actor	(n)	'æktər	男演员	12. office	(n)	'ɔfɪs	办事处
4. actress	(n)	'æktrɪs	女演员	13. advertisement	(n)	ædvə:tɪzment	广告
5. disguise	(n)	dɪs'gaɪz	伪装	14. artwork	(n)	'ɑrt, wɜ:k	艺术品
6. makeup	(n)	'mæk,ʌp	化妆	15. series	(n)	'siriz	电视剧
7. artist	(n)	'artɪst	艺术家	16. embassy	(n)	'embəsi	大使馆
8. fake	(adj)	fek	假的	17. demonstrator	(n)	'demonə'streteɪr	示威者
9. pretend	(v)	prɪ'tend	假装	18. passport	(n)	pæspɔ:t	护照
<hr/>							
ENGLISH (GRAMMAR) KK 中文							
19. makeup artist	(n)	'mæk,ʌp 'artɪst	化妆师				
20. business card	(n)	'bɪznɪs kard	名片				

II. SENTENCES

1. Here is my _____.

2. The _____ ran through the gate of the _____.

3. I am watching my favorite TV _____.

4. She tried to board the airplane but had forgotten to bring her _____.

5. She works as _____ in _____.

6. He wants to be an _____ someday.

7. Let's make a _____.

8. Let's put an _____ in the newspaper.

9. He is busy writing a _____ for a new _____.

10. The script is based on a _____.

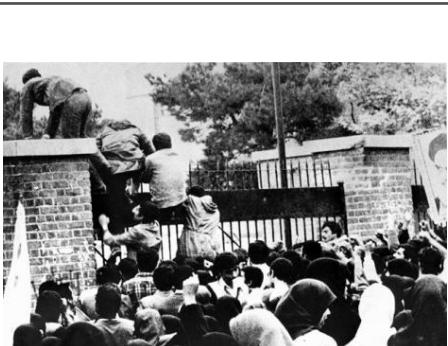
III. WHAT'S UP?



⁰The Argo; artist: Lorenzo Costa (1460–1535); published: Harper's Weekly, 1874 January 18; source: http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Lorenzo_Costa_001.jpg, public domain

IV. READING**Let's Make a Fake Movie**

demonstrators in Iran



demonstrators climbing over the gate



American hostage

In 1979, many many people in Iran were angry with the United States. Every day hundreds of **demonstrators** would gather outside the U.S. **Embassy** in Iran and shout, "ALLAHU AKBAR! MARG BAR AMRIKA! (ALLAH IS GREAT! DEATH TO AMERICA!)". And on November 4, 1979 one day, some of them climbed over the wall and opened the gate! Hundreds of angry demonstrators poured through the gate. The embassy compound was large—over 100,000 square meters. They broke into the buildings there. They took more than 50 Americans hostage. Most of these would not be free until 444 days later.



The six who escaped

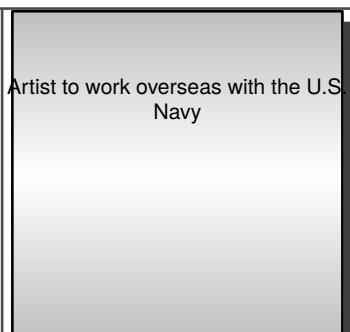


Canadian Ambassador Ken Taylor

But there were a few Americans that worked in another building on the compound. They had their own door onto the street. They sneaked out the door. A few of them went right. Five others went left. The ones that went right were soon captured. The five that went left, escaped. They were later joined by another American who worked outside the embassy and who also escaped. The six hid in an empty house that belonged to the embassy. They called up the Canadian ambassador and asked if they could stay at his house. "Of course!", he answered. "Why didn't you call sooner?"



Tony Mendez



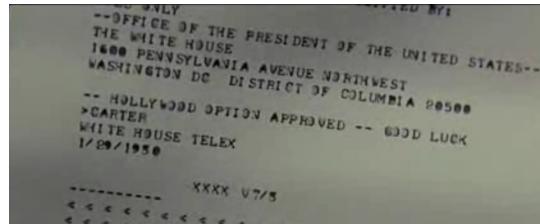
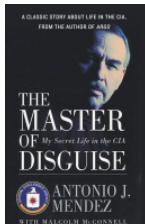
Tony Mendez, Amazon.com



"shady" interviewer

Tony Mendez was an artist. One day he saw an ad in the newspaper that said, "Artist to work overseas with the U.S. Navy". Tony went to the interview in a motel room. The man he met was a little bit "shady" and he told Tony, "Son, this is not the navy." The man was actually from the CIA. Soon, Tony was

working for the CIA.



"Master of Disguise"

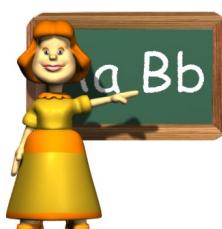
Tony and President Carter

"option approved"

Tony became the CIA's "Chief of Disguise". His specialty was **disguises** and getting people out of dangerous places. He had already gotten hundreds of people out of dangerous places in the past. Now it was his job to get these 6 people out of Iran.



commercial flight



fake teacher?



fake farming expert?

The CIA wanted to sneak them out on a regular commercial flight. One of their first ideas was for the six to **pretend** they were English teachers. But all the English language schools in Iran had already been closed. Canada suggested having them **pretend** to be farming experts. But Tony said, "Have you been to Tehran in January? There's snow on the ground."¹ Most crops don't grow well in snow.

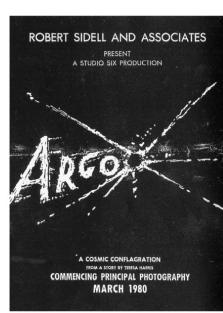
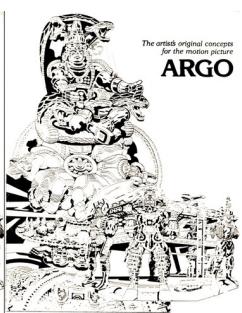
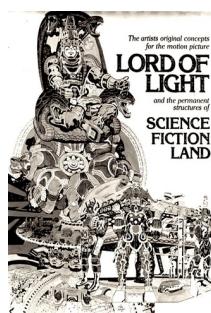


John Chambers John Chambers with ape from "Planet of the Apes" Chambers? and "Spock"



"Spock" from "Star Trek"

Tony had another idea—he would make the six pretend to be people from **Hollywood** who wanted to make a **movie** in Iran. He contacted someone he knew who worked in **Hollywood** called "John Chambers". John Chambers was a **makeup artist**. He had made the apes in the TV **series** called "Planet of the Apes". He had made the ears of "Mr. Spock" in "Star Trek". And sometimes he would make **disguises** for the CIA.



Tony and John found a real movie **script** based on the **novel** "Lord of Light". They gave the movie the new name "Argo". They rented a real **office** in Hollywood and started a fake movie company there called "Studio Six". They made fake **business cards**. They put on a party at a nightclub for Argo.

¹ Hruby (2012): *Washington Post*

They put fake **advertisements** for "Argo" in the newspaper. They had people answering telephone calls. Hollywood reporters heard that John Chambers was involved—so that helped make the movie look real.



Bob Anders
"Director"



Joseph Stafford
"Associate Producer"



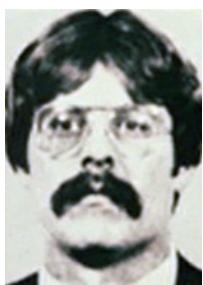
Kathleen Stafford
"Director"



Mark Lijek
"Transportation Coordinator"



Cora Lijek
"Screenwriter"



Henry "Lee" Schatz
"Cameraman"

Then Tony sneaked into Iran. He found the six Americans. He gave them fake Canadian **passports**. They put on disguises to help make them look like movie making people. Cora curled her hair. Kathy wore heavy glasses and carried **artwork** for the fake movie. Mark made his beard black. Bob Anders maybe had the best disguise: He wore sunglasses, tight pants with no pockets, a tight silk shirt that was unbuttoned showing his hairy chest, and a gold chain with a medallion.²



Bob Anders, Kathy Stafford, Joe Stafford, Cora Lijek, Mark Lijek, Lee Schatz



One early morning, they went to the airport. They presented their fake passports. They boarded an airplane and flew out of Iran.

Former President Jimmy Carter has stated that Tony Mendez "has gone down in CIA history as one of the 50 most important CIA operatives."³ Toney Mendez has said, "I don't get tired of telling the story. I just try to tell it well each time."⁴

REFERENCES

1. article: [Mendez, Antonio J.: CIA Goes Hollywood: A Classic Case of Deception. Center for the Study of Intelligence, 43 2000, Nr. 3 \(URL: https://www.cia.gov/library/center-for-the-study-of-intelligence/kent-csi/vol43no3/pdf/v43i3a01p.pdf\)](https://www.cia.gov/library/center-for-the-study-of-intelligence/kent-csi/vol43no3/pdf/v43i3a01p.pdf)
2. article: [Bearman, Joshua: How the CIA Used a Fake Sci-Fi Flick to Rescue Americans From Tehran. Wired Magazine, April 24 2:00am 2007b \(URL: http://www.wired.com/magazine/2007/04/feat_cia/all/\)](http://www.wired.com/magazine/2007/04/feat_cia/all/)
3. article: [Mendez, Antonio J.: A Classic Case of Deception: CIA Goes Hollywood. Central Intelligence Agency, June 27 7:32am 2007 \(URL: http://www.webcitation.org/6EfV06ggM\)](http://www.webcitation.org/6EfV06ggM)
4. book: [Mendez, Antonio J.: *The Master of Disguise: My Secret Life in the CIA*. HarperCollins, October 13 2009 \(URL: http://books.google.com.tw/books?vid=ISBN9780061865305\), ISBN 978-0-06-186530-5](http://books.google.com.tw/books?vid=ISBN9780061865305)
5. article: [Bearman, Joshua: Flight From Iran. Wired Magazine, April 24 2:00am 2007a \(URL: http://www.wired.com/magazine/2007/04/feat_cia_sb/\)](http://www.wired.com/magazine/2007/04/feat_cia_sb/)
6. article: [Hruby, Patrick: Tony Mendez, clandestine CIA hero of Ben Affleck's 'Argo,' reveals the real story behind film smash. Washington Post, October 10 2012 \(URL: http://www.washingtonpost.com/news/2012/oct/10/hollywood-cant-make-this-up-argo-recounts-the-cia-/\)](http://www.washingtonpost.com/news/2012/oct/10/hollywood-cant-make-this-up-argo-recounts-the-cia-/)
7. video: [Online, Warner Brothers: ARGO: Declassified. February 19 2013 \(URL: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tg3MJsvHgEg\)](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tg3MJsvHgEg)

² Bearman (2007b): *Wired Magazine*

Mendez (2007): *Central Intelligence Agency*

³ Online (2013): *ARGO: Declassified* (27:18)

⁴ Online (2013): *ARGO: Declassified* (28:23)

V. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. because _____. <small>what animal?</small>	If I were an animal, I would like to be a _____.
DRAMA:	Your friend has been taken hostage by penguins at the south pole. What do you do?	

VI. SONG

song title:	<i>The Forgotten Toys Song</i> ()	album:
singer:	The Forgotten Toys	lyrics:
lyrics:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_gvQzgPNKio	
mp3:		
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=_gvQzgPNKio	

Hints: Anytime, blues, cares, cold, dream, fears, find, friend, know, name, outside, pain, promises, running, seems, smile, tough, unfair, way

1. Once you had a _____
 2. But now it _____ you'll always be _____
 3. Standing on the _____ looking in _____
 4. Sometimes life is so _____
 5. But when it seems to you that no one _____
 6. I'll be here to make you _____ again
 7. Anytime you need a _____
 8. Just call out my _____
 9. I'll come _____
 10. Anywhere you are I'll _____ you
 11. _____, anywhere
 12. When you're left out in the _____
 13. Just let me _____
 14. I'll be on my _____
 15. I'll be there to chase your _____ away
 16. When it feels like life's too _____
 17. You've had enough empty _____
 18. I'll be here to hold your _____ and _____
- ...

 **LESSON 15: Ships at Sea**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. captain	(n)	'kæptin	船长	16. raft	(n)	ræft	木筏
2. seaman	(n)	'simən	海员	17. rowboat	(n)	'ro,bot	划艇
3. class	(n)	klæs	阶级	18. destroyer	(n)	dri'strɔɪər	驱逐舰
4. crew	(n)	kru	船员们	19. lighthouse	(n)	'laɪt,hauəs	灯塔
5. crew member	(n)	kru 'membər	船员	20. collide	(v)	kə'laid	碰撞
6. operate	(v)	'opə,ret	操作	21. signal	(v)	'sɪgnl	示意
7. sail	(n)	sel	帆	22. abandon	(v)	ə'bændən	离弃
8. sail	(v)	sel	驾船	23. course	(n)	kors	路线
9. board	(v)	bord	上船	24. barrel	(n)	'bærəl	大桶
10. riverbank	(n)	'rivər,bænk	河岸	25. telescope	(n)	'teləskop	望远镜
11. navy	(n)	'nevɪ	海军	26. deck	(n)	dæk	甲板
12. naval	(n)	'nevəl	海军的	27. navigation	(n)	,nævə'geʃən	航行
13. pirate	(n)	'paɪrət	海盗	28. compass	(n)	'kʌmpəs	指南针
14. boat	(n)	bot	小船	29. cabin	(n)	'kæbɪn	客舱
15. ship	(n)	ʃɪp	船	30. sword	(n)	sord	剑

II. SENTENCES

1. The **destroyer** _____ with a **rowboat**.
2. He is a **captain** in the _____.
3. The ship changed _____ 15 degrees to the south.
4. The ship had 10 _____.
5. The ship is carrying 1000 _____ of oil.
6. You can see very far using a _____.
7. During the storm, most of the _____ stayed below _____.
8. Everyone get your _____! _____ are coming!
9. The ship's _____ book is missing.
10. If the _____ breaks, maybe we can still use the stars to find our way home.

III. WHAT'S UP?

label these:

ship, sail, cabin, door, deck, ladder, mast, railing, window

IV. JOKE

One foggy night, a U.S. **naval destroyer** was at sea. Up ahead, the **captain** saw the light of another ship. The two **ships** would soon **collide**. The **captain** got on the radio to the other ship and said, "Change your **course** 15 degrees to the north."

The reply came back, "I will not change my **course**. You change *your course* 15 degrees to the south."

The captain was angry and radioed back, "I am a **captain** in the United States **Navy**! Change *your course* 15 degrees to the north."

The reply came back, "I am a **seaman**. Change *your course* 15 degrees to the south."

The **captain** now was very very angry and shouted back into the radio, "I AM A U.S. **NAVAL DESTROYER!** CHANGE YOUR **COURSE IMMEDIATELY** 15 DEGREES TO THE NORTH OR FACE THE CONSEQUENCES! No discussion! Over!" The reply once more came back, "I am the _____."

...The **captain** immediately changed **course**.

References

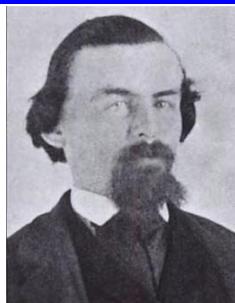
1. comment: <http://www.snopes.com/military/lighthouse.asp>
2. comment: http://www.navy.mil/navydata/navy_legacy_hr.asp?id=174



This is Captain Hancock, you will divert your course...

Watch a video similar to this story at

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=ajq8eag4Mvc>

V. MYSTERY FROM HISTORY

Benjamin Briggs
(37 years old)



son Arthur (7 years old),
and wife Sarah



daughter Sophia
(2 years old)



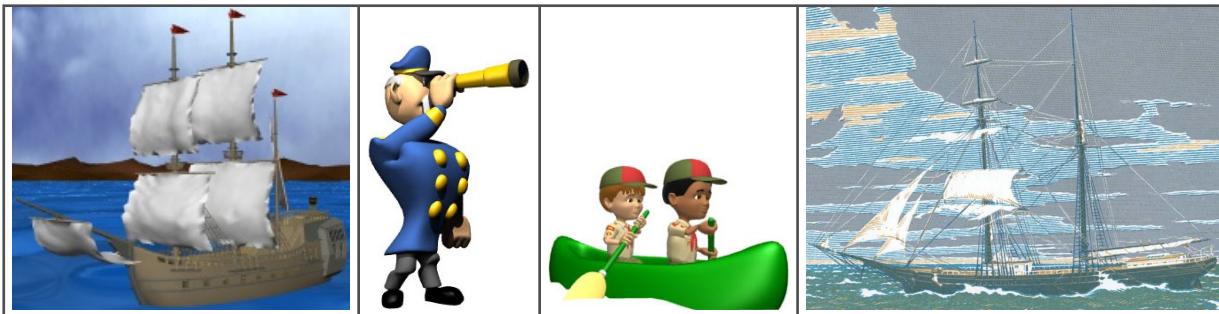
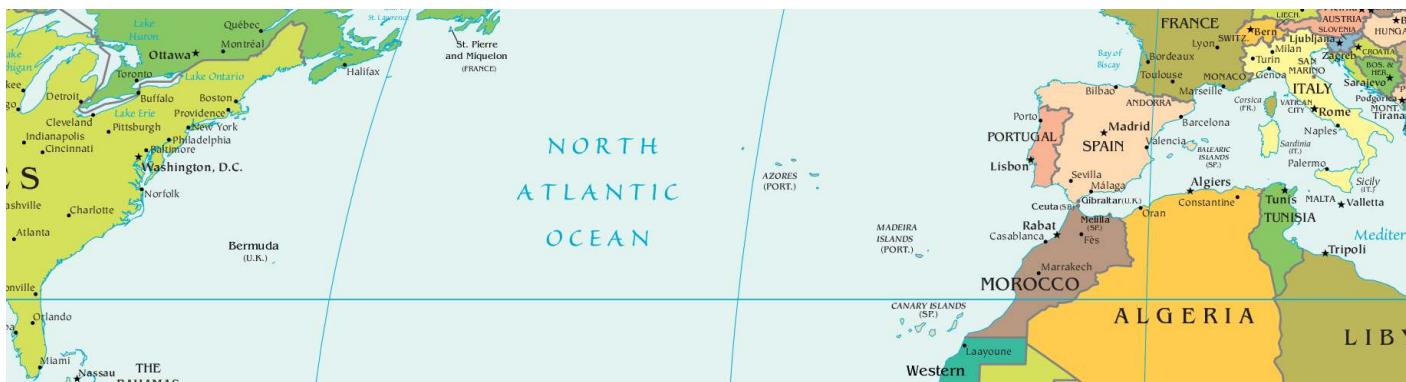
The Mary Celeste

Captain Benjamin Spooner Briggs was the **captain** of a **ship** called the *Mary Celeste*. Since he was a young boy, he had been raised as a **seaman** by his father, who was himself a sea **captain**. And before being captain of the *Mary Celeste*, Captain Briggs had already been **captain** of three other ships. Captain Briggs was said to have "good character" and to be "intelligent".¹ He never even drank alcohol. The **crew members** of the *Mary Celeste* were said to be "peaceable and first-class sailors".²

The *Mary Celeste* left New York on November 5, 1872 for Italy, with 1700 **barrels of alcohol** (酒精). Captain Briggs had good reason to be careful—also onboard were his wife Sarah and their two year old daughter Sophia, and back on land was their son Arthur. And besides that, Captain Briggs was $\frac{1}{3}$ owner of the ship.

¹ Blackwood (2005): *Enigmatic Events*, page 30

² Blackwood (2005): *Enigmatic Events*, page 30



About one month later on December 4, another ship called the *Dei Gratia* was **sailing** across the Atlantic Ocean when they saw a ship about 5 miles away. The ship seemed to be in trouble. They looked through a **telescope**, but couldn't see anyone on the ship. The *Dei Gratia* got closer and tried to **signal** the ship, but there was no answer. Three men then got in a **rowboat** and went over to the ship. The silent ship was from America—it was the *Mary Celeste*.³



Why was the ship so quiet? Maybe it had been attacked by **pirates** and everyone was lying dead on the **deck**. Two of the men climbed up onto the **deck** and looked, but there was no one. Maybe they had become sick and everyone was lying dead below **deck**. The men went below **deck**, but no one was there either. The men searched the entire ship. There was no one anywhere. Everyone was gone. There wasn't even a dead body to be found. They had all simply disappeared.

The *Mary Celeste* was in good condition. In fact, three men from the *Dei Gratia* were able to **sail** the *Mary Celeste* to Europe with “no difficulty”.⁴ The ship had enough food for six months. There was plenty of drinking water. There was no wine or beer found. There was no sign that there had been a fire. If the ship had a small **boat**, it was missing. The ship's **navigation** book and other papers were missing. The **compass** had been destroyed.⁵ The bed and other items in the **cabin** were wet. There “were ropes hanging over the side” of the ship. Everyone seemed to have left in a hurry.⁶

A **sword** was found on the ship. It appeared to have blood on it. But later a doctor found that this was

³ Fay (1989): *The Story of the "Mary Celeste"* pages 38–39

⁴ Wilkins (1930): *Popular Mechanics* 54 [1930], page 548

⁵ Fay (1989): *The Story of the "Mary Celeste"*, page 40

⁶ Fay (1989): *The Story of the "Mary Celeste"* (pages 40,63,64,68,69,73,132)

not blood. Also there were what looked like two cuts in the ship, maybe from the **sword**.⁷ Another captain inspected the Mary Celeste and reported that there was "no evidence of violence".⁸

Where did everyone go? Nobody knows. It is one of the biggest mysteries in the history of the sea.

REFERENCES

1. book: Fay, Charles Edey: *The Story of the "Mary Celeste"*. Courier Dover Publications, 1989 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN0486257304>), ISBN 0486257304
2. book: Rosbe, Judith Westlund: *Maritime Marion, Massachusetts*. Arcadia Publishing, 2002 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN0738523666>), ISBN 0738523666
3. book: Wilkins, Harold T.: The Secrets of Davy Jone's Cupboard. Popular Mechanics, 54 October 1930, Nr. 4 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=j0IDAAAAMBAJ>), ISSN 0032-4558
4. book: Blackwood, Gary L.: *Enigmatic Events*. Marshall Cavendish, 2005 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=ISBN076141889X>), ISBN 076141889X

VI. VIDEO



Here is a documentary about the Mary Celeste:

<http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=CLuzuPaFZtQ>

VII. DISCUSSION

What happened to the Mary Celeste? What do you think about each of these theories (理论)?

1. It was just a trick to get insurance (保险) money.⁹
2. The crew got drunk (喝醉的).
3. The crew had a mutiny (叛变), killed the captain and his family, and later also died.
4. Pirates attacked (攻击) the ship and killed everyone.
5. An approaching iceberg (冰山) scared everyone off the ship and into a smaller boat; that smaller boat later sunk and everyone died.
6. Some gas from the alcohol exploded (爆炸). The captain was afraid the entire ship would explode or catch fire (着火). So everyone hurriedly got in a smaller boat and watched to see what would happen. But then a wind came up and blew the Mary Celeste away, leaving the ten people out in the ocean.

VIII. PRESENTATION

What happened to the people on the Mary Celeste?

IX. WHAT'S UP?

⁷ Fay (1989): *The Story of the "Mary Celeste"*, pages 79–82

⁸ Fay (1989): *The Story of the "Mary Celeste"*, page 86

⁹ *New York Sun*, 1873 March 12



Watch it at <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fN6INlfyIk4>

X. SONG

song title:	<i>I am the Lighthouse</i> (1984)	album:	<i>New Point Of View</i>
singer:	New Gaither Vocal Band	lyrics:	New Gaither Vocal Band
lyrics:	http://www.lyrics78.com/GAITHER-VOCAL-BAND-I-AM-THE-LIGHTHOUSE-LYRICS/1321/		
mp3:			
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PsDCHOY2aiU		

Hints: amazement, captain, chill, command, dark, degrees, discussion, eyes, foggy, light, lighthouse, north, voice, seaman, ship, shout, south, voice, War, World

1. In the midst of _____ II with tensions running high
 2. Off the eastern seaboard, one _____ and _____ night
 3. The _____ sighted out ahead, just off the starboard side,
 4. the beacon of another _____ ...The two would soon collide.
 5. "Adjust your course ten degrees to the _____," he radioed ahead.
 6. Much to his _____, the 'ship' replied instead...
 7. "Adjust your course ten degrees to the _____."
 8. The captain felt a _____.
 9. His _____ grew cold and narrowed, and the two drew closer still.
 10. "I'm the captain of this vessel, and this is a _____.
 11. Adjust your course ten _____ to the north, or receive a reprimand."
 12. Again, the _____ replied, as calm and smooth as glass
 13. "Adjust your course ten degrees to the south. I'm a _____, second class."
 14. "I'm a U. S. Naval Destroyer," snapped the captain with a _____,
 15. "Now adjust your course, ten degrees, no _____. Over and out."
 16. They drew unnervingly closer; his eyes fixed on the _____.
 17. This time the _____ ripped through the air like lightning tears the night.
 18. "I am the _____. I'm the _____!
- ...



 **LESSON 16: Help Me**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. help	(v/n)	həlp	帮助	8. serve	(v)	sərv	服务
2. assist	(v)	ə'sist	帮助	9. service	(n)	'sə'veis	服务
3. assistance	(n)	ə'sis'təns	帮助	10. relief	(n)	rɪ'lef	救济物品
4. support	(v)	sə'port	支撑	11. relieve	(v)	rɪ'lɪv	缓和
5. sustain	(v)	sə'sten	维持	12. hide	(vt)	haɪd	藏起来
6. sustenance	(n)	'sʌstənəns	食物	13. hide	(vi)	haɪd	躲藏
7. support	(n/v)	sə'port	扶养	14. sewer	(n)	'suər	下水道

II. SENTENCES

1. Can I _____ you?
2. Can you help _____ this project?
3. My computer would not start up so I called for technical _____.
4. Where did they _____ the money?
5. Quick! Let's _____ behind that rock!
6. _____ was flown to the earthquake victims.
7. Food and medicine was sent to _____ the earthquake victims.
8. She worked three jobs to _____ her children.
9. He became a soldier because he wanted to _____ his country.
10. My new computer came with a one year _____ agreement.
11. They _____ themselves with coconuts and fish while they were on the island.
12. Coconuts and fish were there only _____ while they were on the island.

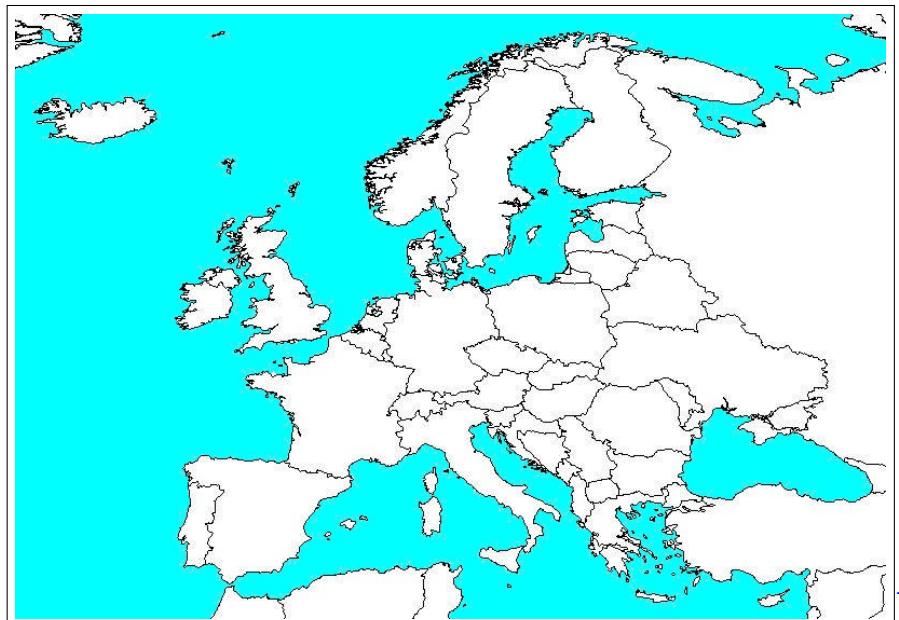
III. WHAT'S UP?

The picture to the right is from the movie In Darkness (黑暗弥漫), which is based on a true story. What do you think the movie is about?



IV. GEOGRAPHY

Find these countries: Austria, Belarus, Czech Republic, Germany, Hungary, Italy, Lithuania, Poland, Slovakia, Ukraine

**V. READING**

Angel in the Sewer



Lwów Ghetto



Leopold Socha



Pavel and Kristina Chiger



Paulina Chiger

Before World War II, about 150,000 Jews lived in Lwów, Poland. But during the war, the Nazis came. They hated Jews. Soldiers started killing as many as they could. By May 1943, there were less than 8000 Jews left there.

Some tried to escape. One group was led by a man named Ignacy Chiger. Inside an apartment, they used spoons, forks, and other small tools to dig through a concrete floor to find a way into the city sewers. Finally after months, they succeeded. They climbed down into the sewer.

Ignacy and others started looking for a place to live down there. But soon they ran into three sewer workers. One was Leopold Socha. He was a former thief and had spent time in jail.

The Jews had been caught. They told the workers what they were doing. Leopold and the workers could easily have reported them to the Nazis and been given money. But they didn't. Instead, Leopold decided to help them.

Leopold told Ignacy that he would help 20 Jews; but not for free. They had to pay. Leopold told the Jews that he would leave them if they stopped paying. Most of that money came from Ignacy.

¹<http://geography.about.com/library/blank/blxeurope.htm>

Everyday Leopold brought them food. Every week he took their clothes to wash them. He brought them pages from newspapers. He brought them medicine. Leopold knew the sewers maybe better than any other man. He knew the best places to hide. He knew how to keep the Nazi soldiers away from the Jews.

After several months, the Jews' money ran out—they had no more money to pay. Leopold said the work was too dangerous to do for free. So they told each other goodbye. Leopold left them there alone.

The next day, they heard footsteps in that dark dark place. The footsteps got closer and closer. Soon, they found out who it was—it was Leopold! He had come back. "This is my work. These are my Jews", he said.² Leopold started using his own money to help them.

But even with Leopold's help, life was very hard in the sewer. The sewer was a horrible place. It was filled with spider webs. There were "hundreds and hundreds" of rats. Walls were covered with sludge and tiny yellow worms.³ Most of it was pitch dark. A six meter wide *Peltew River* ran through it; it could easily grab and drown anyone who got too close. And the soldiers knew Jews were in the sewer, and sometimes they would bomb it.

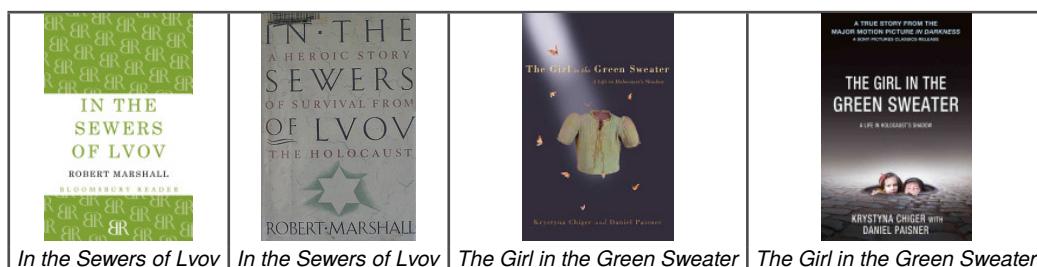
The sewer system was huge and built like a maze. Each day one of the men would crawl through about 2 kilometers of pipe to get water. Sometimes the pipe would only be about 40 centimeters wide. He would put the water in a tea kettle that he carried with his teeth. After he got the water, there was not enough room to turn around, so he crawled backwards. Each day, everyone got 3/4 of a glass of water to drink.⁴

Once in 1944, melting snow and heavy rain made water rise all the way up to their necks. Ignacy's daughter screamed to a man named Yaakov, "Pray, Yaakov! Pray to God to save us!" Yaakov prayed. The water went back down. Years later she said, "It was a miracle."

In the end, only 10 of the original 21 survived. Finally, the war ended and on July 28, 1944, Leopold lifted the sewer cover and told the Jews that they were free. One by one they crawled out. The bright sunlight hurt their eyes. They had been in the sewer for 14 months.



Two years later in 1946, Leopold and his daughter were riding bicycles. A Russian military truck raced towards Leopold's daughter. Leopold was able to push her out of the way. He saved yet another life, but this time he himself was killed. His blood ran into the place where he had already given so much of his life—his blood ran down into the sewer.⁵



² Edwards (1991): *The New York Times*

³ Chiger and Paisner (2010): *The Girl in the Green Sweater: A Life in Holocaust's Shadow* (Introduction)

⁴ Chiger and Paisner (2010): *The Girl in the Green Sweater: A Life in Holocaust's Shadow* (Introduction)

⁵ Edwards (1991): *The New York Times*

References

- book: Marshall, Robert: *In the Sewers of Lvov*. Bloomsbury Publishing, August 31 2012a (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/gp/product/B0091DC6XQ/>), ISBN 9781448210022
- book: Marshall, Robert: *In the Sewers of Lvov: A Heroic Story of Survival from the Holocaust*. Scribner, August 31 2012b (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0684193205>), ISBN 978-0684193205
- book: Chiger, Krystyna and Paisner, Daniel: *The Girl in the Green Sweater: A Life in Holocaust's Shadow*. Media Tie-In edition edition. St. Martin's Press, September 30 2008 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B003H4I4S6/>), ISBN 9780312376567
- book: Chiger, Krystyna and Paisner, Daniel: *The Girl in the Green Sweater: A Life in Holocaust's Shadow*. Media Tie-In edition edition. St. Martin's Press, April 1 2010 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B003H4I4S6/>), ISBN 0312376561
- article: Edwards, Ivana: From a Polish Sewer, War Memories. The New York Times, November 24 1991 (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/1991/11/24/nyregion/from-a-polish-sewer-war-memories.html>)
- web: <http://www.aish.com/ho/p/48966371.html>

 **LESSON 17: Hygiene**
I. VOCABULARY 

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. hygiene	(n)	'haɪdʒɪn	卫生	11. mix	(v)	mɪks	混和
2. soap	(n)	sop	肥皂	12. recycle	(v)	ri'saɪkl	回收
3. shampoo	(n)	ʃæm'pu	洗发水	13. refugee	(n)	,rɛfju'dzi	难民
4. dirty	(adj)	'dɜːtɪ	脏的	14. camp	(n)	kæmp	营地
5. clean	(adj)	klin	干淨的	15. infect	(v)	ɪn'fekt	传染
6. clean	(v)	klin	打扫	16. disease	(n)	dɪ'ziz	疾病
7. scrape	(v)	skrep	刮	17. pathogen	(n)	'pæθədʒən	病原体
8. wash	(v)	waʃ	洗	18. diarrhea	(n)	'daɪə'rɪə	腹泻
9. scrub	(v)	skrʌb	用力擦洗	19. pneumonia	(n)	nju'monjə	肺炎
10. sanitize	(v)	'sænə,tæɪz	消毒	20. lab	(n)	læb	实验室

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
21. organization	(n)	,ɔrgənɪz̬eɪʃən	组织
22. refugee camp	(n)	,rɛfju'dzi kæmp	难民营
23. throw away	(v)	θro ə'we	丢掉
24. dispose of	(v)	dɪ'spoz əv	处理掉

II. SENTENCES 

- I bought three _____ of soap.
bars/chunks/cubes/loaves
- He and his family fled Uganda and became **refugees** in Kenya.
- They didn't live in a _____, but they were still very poor.
- They got sick because they couldn't _____ their hands.
- Millions of children die from _____ related **diseases**.
- Every year, about 3.5 million children die from _____ and _____.
- The best to fight these _____ is simply for people to _____ their _____ with _____.
- Hotels in the U.S. _____ about 2.6 million bars of soap every day.
- He _____ the used soap to make new soap.
- Even soap gets _____. Before sending it out, it must be _____.
- To recycle soap, hair or anything else is _____ off.
- The soap was sent to a _____ to make sure it contains no _____.

III. JOKE 

There is a pastor. Every one in his church likes him very much. One woman in his church is very old and very poor. She has two dogs. She invites the pastor over for lunch. When the pastor comes into her house, he sees that it is very **dirty**. The pastor is nervous. He asks, are you sure the dishes are **clean**? She answers, they're as **clean** as **soap** and water can get them! They have a nice lunch together. The pastor likes dogs very much. He asks, can I see your dogs? She says, "OK, I'll call

them!" So she shouts out, "COME HERE

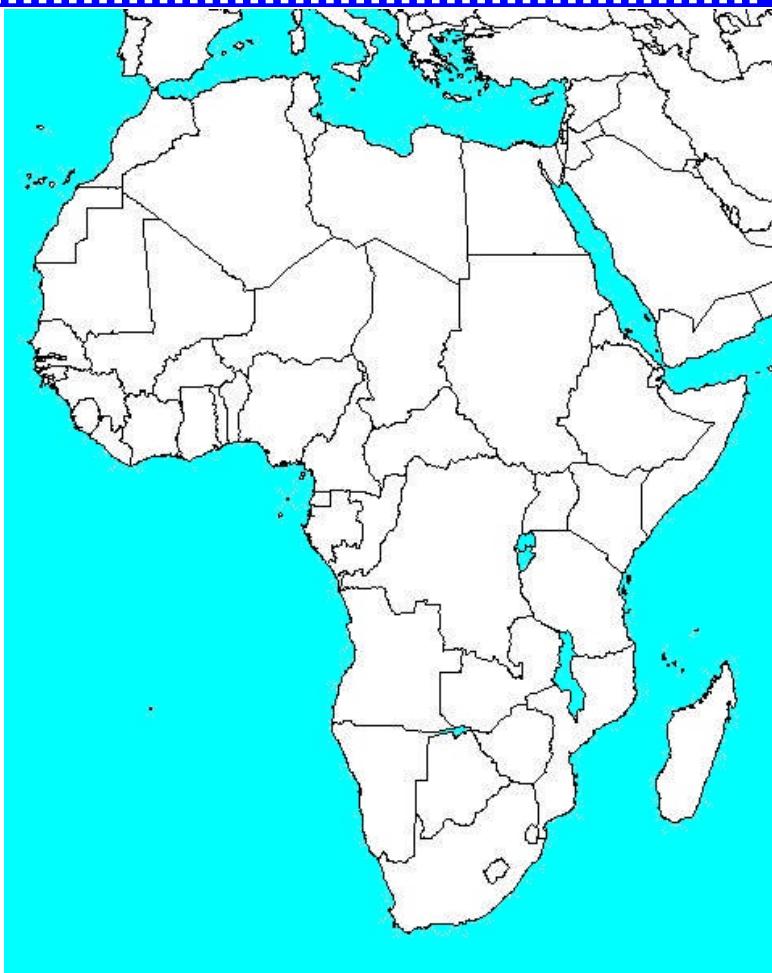
! COME HERE

!"¹

(1ST DOG'S NAME)

(2ND DOG'S NAME)

IV. GEOGRAPHY



Find these countries:

Burundi, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Ethiopia, Kenya, Malawi, Rwanda, Somalia, Tanzania, Uganda,

V. READING

Soap Gives Hope



Derreck Kayongo grew up in **Uganda** during the 1970s in very troubled times and mass killings. For about 10 years, on his walk home from school, he would often see dead bodies on the side of the road. One day a big soldier came to his village. He asked them who had committed a certain crime. Finally, he just randomly chose 4 boys saying, "You, you, you...come up." Then he pulled out his gun and shot all four of them.

Derrick and his family fled Uganda and became **refugees** in **Kenya**. They didn't live in a **refugee camp**, but they were still very poor. Derreck said, "We lost everything. ...The people worse off lived

¹ reference: <http://www.jokebook.eu/jokes/soap/best>

in the camps. Soap was so hard to come by, ...People were getting so sick simply because they couldn't wash their hands."²

In fact, millions of children die from **hygiene** related **diseases**. Every year, about 3.5 million children die from **diarrhea** and **pneumonia**. One of the best and cheapest ways to fight these diseases is simply for people to **wash their hands** with soap.

Derreck eventually made it to the U.S. During his first night in a hotel, he found three kinds of soap in his room—hand soap, face soap, and body soap. Derreck didn't know that there was so many kinds of soap. To Derreck, finding soap was like finding treasure. He put two bars of soap in his bag and left one there. When he returned the next day, three new bars of soap were there. Derreck was scared. He didn't have much money, and he was afraid he would have to pay for the new **bars** of soap. He said, "I tried to return the new soap ...since I thought they were charging me for it. When I was told it was just hotel policy to provide new soap every day, I couldn't believe it."

In fact, he later learned that hotels in the U.S. **throw away** about 2.6 million bars of soap every day. Derreck called his father, who used to be a soap maker in Uganda. "My dad said people in America can afford to **throw it away**. But I just started to think, 'What if we took some of this soap and **recycled** it, made brand new soap from it and then sent it home to people who couldn't afford soap?'"³

So starting in 2009, he asked hotels to give him used soap. He drove around in his own truck picking it up. Derreck experimented in his home with how to recycle soap using a small electric pot called a “crockpot”. Many of his friends thought the idea was stupid.⁴ But he continued on anyways. He sent the recycled soap to a **refugee camp** in Kenya. The people there were very happy to get it.

Derreck's now has his own **organization** called the *Global Soap Project*. He has his own factory. Hundreds of hotels have sent soap. Some of these are very expensive soap such as Bvlgari, which for one bar costs about \$27. As of 2011, about 400 tons of soap has piled up at Derreck's factory waiting to be recycled. The Hilton Hotel chain offered \$1.3 million dollars to help.

Even soap gets **dirty**. Before sending it out, it must be **sanitized**. To do this, first hair or anything else is **scraped** off. Next, it's put into a **mixing** machine—Derreck bought this machine using his own money.⁵ Then it is reshaped to something that looks like bars of soap. Finally, it is sent to a **lab** to make sure it contains no **pathogens**.

As of December 2012, the Global Soap Project has sent about 500,000 bars of soap to 23 countries. Derreck said, "If I can put a bar of soap in every child's hand, who can't afford it, that's my goal".⁶ He also said, "...what we've done ...is to bring a little bit of hope through a bar of soap".



² Ruffins (2011): CNN

³ Ruffins (2011): CNN

⁴ ↗ Kavango (2012): *The Blog*

⁵ Long (2011): 11 Alive

⁶ ↗ Kayongo (2012): *The Blog*

References:

- article: Ruffins, Ebonne: Recycling hotel soap to save lives. CNN, June 16 20:54gmt 2011 (URL: <http://edition.cnn.com/2011/US/06/16/cnnheroes.kayongo.hotel.soap/index.html>)
- article: Long, Melissa: One man's trash is another's treasure. 11 Alive, December 01 2:36pm 2011 (URL: <http://www.11alive.com/news/article/215271/3/One-mans-trash-is-anothers-treasure>)
- blog: Kayongo, Derreck: A Passion Driven Life With a Purpose. The Blog, December 04 1:45pm 2012 (URL: http://www.huffingtonpost.com/derreck-kayongo/global-soap-project_b_2238121.html)
- web: <http://www.globalsoap.org/>

VI. DISCUSSION

What could you recycle to help people in a refugee camp?

VII. SONG

song title: *Yakety Yak* (1958) | album: (*single*)
singer: The Coasters | lyrics: The Coasters

lyrics: <http://www.stlyrics.com/lyrics/standbyme/yaketyyak.htm>
mp3: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B0012GLMJY>
video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=cHB3Rbz10I>

Hints: back, broom, cash, cat, cleaning, coat, cooks, dirty, dog, dust, floor, Friday, friend, finish, garbage, hat, laundromat, papers, ride, rock, roll, room, sight, talk, trash,

1. Take out the _____ and the _____
2. Or you don't get no spending _____
3. If you don't _____ that kitchen _____
4. You ain't gonna _____ and _____ no more
5. Yakety yak (don't _____)
6. Just finish _____ up your _____
7. Let's see that _____ fly with that _____
8. Get all that _____ out of _____
9. Or you don't go out _____ night
10. Yakety yak (don't _____)
11. You just put on your _____ and _____
12. And walk yourself to the _____
13. And when you _____ doing that
14. Bring in the _____ and put out the _____
15. Yakety yak (don't talk back)
16. Don't you give me no _____ looks
17. Your father's hip; he knows what _____
18. Just tell your hoodlum _____ outside
19. You ain't got time to take a _____
20. Yakety yak (don't talk back)
...

VIII. WRITING: CHANGE THE SONG

1. Take out the _____ and the _____
2. Or you don't get no _____
3. If you don't _____ that _____
4. You are not going to _____ and _____ no more

LESSON 18: Helping the Helpless

I. VOCABULARY

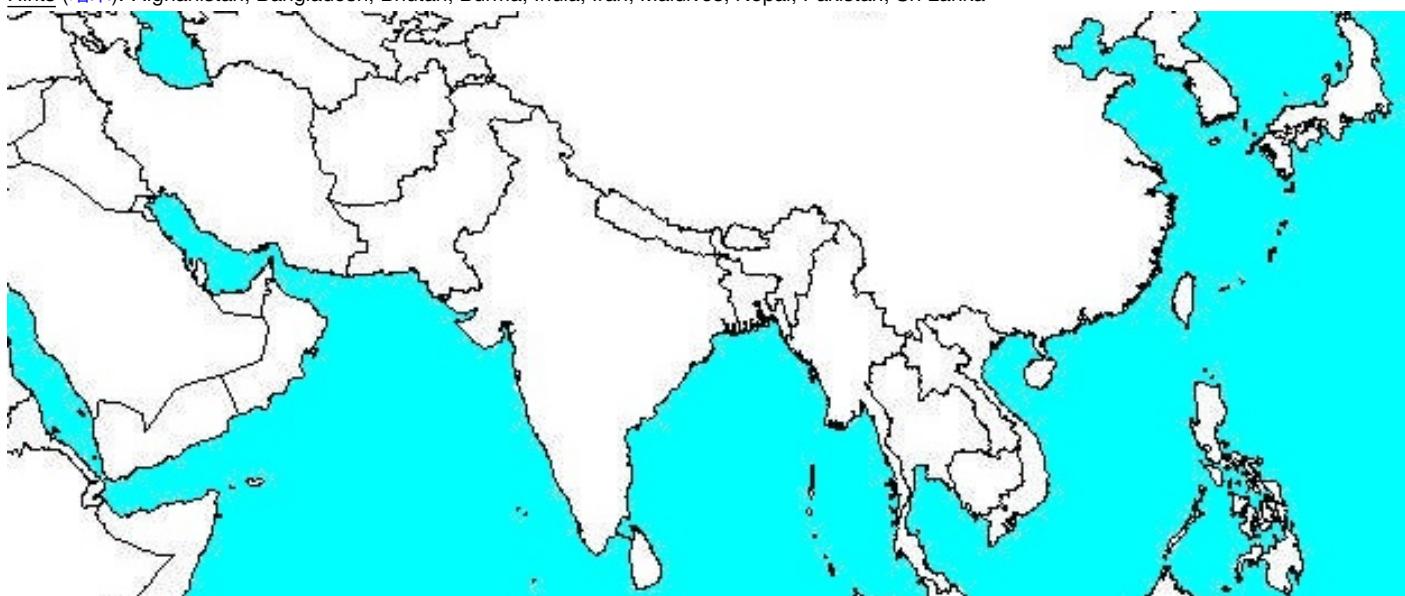
ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. affection	(n)	ə'fekʃən	感情	11. helpless	(adj)	'helplis	无助的
2. purpose	(n)	'pɜ:pəs	目的	12. homeless	(adj)	'hōmlis	无家的
3. dignity	(n)	'dignəti	尊严	13. sick	(adj)	sik	有病的
4. nutrition	(n)	nju'triʃən	营养	14. elderly	(adj)	'eldərlɪ	年纪的人
5. reach out	(v)	ritʃ aʊt	帮助	15. mentally ill	(adj)	'mentlɪ ɪl	精神病的
6. save	(v)	sev	救	16. friendless	(adj)	'frēndlɪs	没有朋友的
7. physical	(adj)	'fizɪkl	身体的	17. beggar	(n)	'begeə	乞丐
8. mental	(adj)	'mentl	精神的	18. class	(n)	klæs	阶级
9. shocked	(adj)	ʃɔkt	震惊的	19. upper class	(adj)	'ʌpər klæs	上层阶级的
10. elite	(adj)	e'lit	精英的	20. lower class	(adj)	'loər klæs	下层阶级的

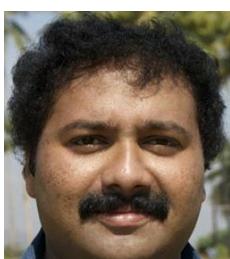
II. SENTENCES

1. People need both physical _____ and _____ nutrition.
2. What is the _____ of my life?
3. Pets need love and _____.
4. _____ out and help someone.
5. They were _____ by what they saw and heard.
6. He attended an _____ school.
7. He wants to help the _____.
8. He is a friend to the _____.

III. GEOGRAPHY

Hints (暗示): Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, Burma, India, Iran, Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan, Sri Lanka



IV. READING**Helper of the Helpless**

Narayanan Krishnan is from India. He loved to cook. He began working as a chef at the Taj Hotel in Bangalore, a very **high class** and expensive hotel. Narayanan did well as a chef and made a lot of money. Sometimes he would receive tips of 20, 50, or 100 U.S. dollars. He was even chosen to be sent to Europe for a job there.



But before he was to leave India, he visited his hometown. There Krishnan saw an old man who was so hungry, that he was eating his own waste. Narayanan was **shocked**. He bought some food and gave it to the man. The man ate it all within seconds.



He never said "Thank you"; but instead he gave Narayanan a look of **gratitude**. It was that look that changed Narayanan's life. Narayanan later said, "If he would have thanked me that day, I would have again gone back to my Taj Hotel."¹ But instead he went home and thought, "What is the **purpose** of my life? What am I going to do? In a star hotel, I feed all my guests. But where in my hometown, there are people who are living, even without food."²



Narayanan soon answered his own question: "I want to **save** my people. That is the **purpose** of my life."³ He didn't take the job in Europe. In 2002, he quit his job and started feeding all the **homeless**, **mentally ill**, and **destitute** in his hometown. He used his own money to buy food from the market, he prepared the meals himself, and took the food to those who needed it.



But Narayanan did not just give them food. He also gave them love: He cut their hair. He shaved them. He bathed them. He said, "For them to feel ...they are also human beings, there are people to care for them, they have a hand to hold, hope to live. Food is one part. Love is another part. So, the food will give them **physical nutrition**. The love and **affection** which you show, will give them **mental nutrition**."⁴

Not everyone was happy about what Narayanan was doing. Narayanan is from an "**upper class**" part of society called the *Brahmins*. The people Narayanan was helping are considered to be "**lower class**" people. In Indian society, Narayanan was "not supposed to touch these people, clean these

¹ Krishnan (2010b): *TEDx MICA - Narayanan Krishnan -The Joy Of Giving* (01min:47sec)

² Krishnan (2010a): *CNN Top 10 Hero Krishnan's interview in CNN International* (00min:44sec)

³ <http://www.akshayatrust.org/>

⁴ Krishnan (2010a): *CNN Top 10 Hero Krishnan's interview in CNN International* (01min:50sec)

people, hug these people, feed these people." But Narayanan says, "Everybody has got 5.5 liters of blood. I am just a human being. For me everybody the same."⁵

Not everyone understood what Narayanan was doing. His own father thought that he had become **mentally ill**. He told his son that he would be OK, that he just needed to be on some medicine. Because his parents did not like what he was doing, he was willing to stop doing it. He told his mother and father, "I could not be here without your presence in this world. If you feel what I am doing is not right, I don't want to do it." But he also told them, "But before that I want you to see what I am doing." They agreed and started coming with him. But he did not just want them to watch from inside a car. He told them, "I want you to get out, and give food to those people." His mom and dad did this. They were shocked by what they saw and heard. They had a change of heart and gave their blessing to what their son was doing.⁶



Narayanan no longer works alone. In 2003, Narayanan started an organization called *Akshaya Trust*. "Akshaya is committed to helping the **helpless, homeless, sick, elderly, mentally ill** and **destitute** in Madurai, India by providing healthy food, care, and opportunity to rehabilitate in order to restore human **dignity**."⁷

References:

video:	Krishnan, Narayanan: CNN Top 10 Hero Krishnan's interview in CNN International. 2010a (URL: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=q0XqvBIbpc)
video:	Krishnan, Narayanan: TEDx MICA - Narayanan Krishnan -The Joy Of Giving. 2010b (URL: www.youtube.com/watch?v=2G5fAN47d0M)
film:	Jesse Roesler, et.al.: Give Me Your Hungry. 2013 (URL: http://givemeyourhungry.com/)
web:	http://www.akshayatrust.org/

V. DISCUSSION

1. If you saw a man eating garbage, what would you do?
2. Would it be fun to do what Narayanan does? Why? Why not?
3. Your friends don't like what you are doing. Will you stop?
4. After you become an adult, your parents don't like what you are doing. Will you stop?
5. How could you use some skill you have to help needy people?
6. Narayanan said he was careful to not help **beggars**. Why?

⁵ Krishnan (2010a): *CNN Top 10 Hero Krishnan's interview in CNN International* (02min:26sec)

⁶ Krishnan (2010b): *TEDx MICA - Narayanan Krishnan -The Joy Of Giving* (04min:42sec)

⁷ <http://www.akshayatrust.org/>

VI. SONG

song title: *Somewhere Tonight* (1991) || album: *Within Reach*
 singer: Rick Cua || lyrics:

lyrics: http://www.newreleasetuesday.com/lyricsdetail.php?lyrics_id=18251
 mp3: [Link](#)
 video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T62u1uBGwBQ>

Hints: again, all, believe, change, cold, cup, dead, done, edge, empty, family, forget, friend, gentle, heavy, knees, life, out, preach, reach, recovery, road, run, sea, up, way,

1. Somewhere tonight, on a winding _____, _____,
2. is an _____ heart with a _____ load,
3. looking for a _____ to a better _____,
4. Let your love _____ somewhere tonight.

5. He was almost _____ from the things he'd _____,
6. Living on the _____ put him on the _____,
7. Then a _____ soul brought him to his _____,
8. Out from the _____, from the stormy _____,

9. He had lost it _____, lost his _____.
10. Then he heard the call to _____.
11. From the bottom _____, started all over _____.
12. with an empty _____ and a new found _____.

13. And let's not _____ that somewhere tonight, on a winding _____,
14. is an _____ heart with a _____ load,
15. looking for a _____ to a better _____,
16. Let your love _____ somewhere tonight.

17. There's a _____ one right within your _____,
18. but you don't need to _____ and you don't need to _____,
19. Just _____ that what's in your _____
20. can _____ someone's hell into paradise.

 ...



 **LESSON 19: I am a Soldier**
I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. soldier	(n)	'soldʒər	士兵	16. trick	(v)	trik	哄骗
2. commander	(n)	kə'mændər	指挥官	17. order	(v)	ɔrdər	指示
3. war	(n)	wər	战争	18. order	(n)	ɔrdər	命令
4. Allies	(n)	ə'laɪz	盟国	19. hide	(v)	haɪd	藏起来
5. invade	(v)	in'ved	入侵	20. surrender	(v)	sə'rendər	投降
6. invasion	(n)	in'vezən	入侵	21. pardon	(v)	'pɑrdn	原谅
7. jungle	(n)	dʒʌŋgl	丛林	22. guerrilla warfare	(n)	gə'rɪlə wər	游击战
8. fight	(v)	fait	打仗	23. battle	(n)	'bætl	交战
9. shoot	(v)	ʃut	射中	24. warrior	(n)	'wɔrɪər	武士
10. kill	(v)	kɪl	杀死	25. armor	(n)	'armər	盔甲
11. wound	(v)	wund	伤害	26. search party	(n)	sə:t's 'partɪ	搜索队
12. intelligence	(n)	ɪn'telɪdʒəns	情报	27. survive	(v)	sə'veɪv	活下来
13. gun	(n)	gʌn	枪	28. army	(n)	'armɪ	陆军
14. bullet	(n)	'bʊlɪt	子弹	29. navy	(n)	'nevi	海军
15. trick	(n)	trik	诡计	30. airforce	(n)	'erfɔrs	空军

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
31. World War II	(n)	wɜ:ld wər tu	第二次世界大战

II. SENTENCES

1. He was a Japanese _____ in World War II.
2. The Allies _____ the Philippines in 1945.
3. Japan _____ in 1945.
4. He was trained in guerrilla war and _____.
5. She thought that he was just trying to _____ her.
6. He hid in the _____ for 29 years.
7. His commander _____ him to surrender.
8. His commander read the _____ for him to surrender.
9. The soldier gave up his gun and _____.
10. The camp teaches children how to _____ in the forest.

III. READING**Twenty-nine Years in the Jungle**

Hiroo Onoda

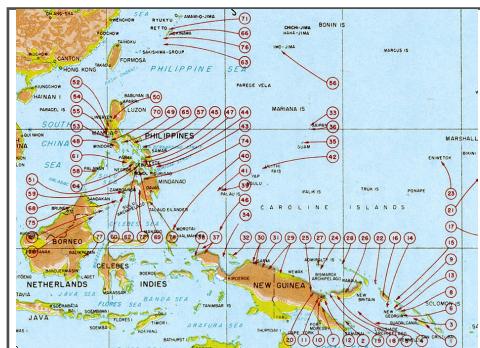


Hiroo on right



Lubang Island

Hiroo Onoda was a Japanese **soldier** in **World War II**. He was trained in **guerrilla warfare** and **intelligence**. On December 17, 1944, when he was 22 years old, he arrived on Lubang Island in the Philippines.



Allied landings August 1942–August 1945



Japanese Prime Minister Suzuki circa 1945



Japanese surrender signed September 2, 1945

In February 1945, the **Allies invaded** the island. Hiroo was sent into the **jungle** to conduct **guerrilla warfare**. But before Hiroo left, his **commander ordered** him, “*You are absolutely forbidden to die by your own hand. It may take three years, it may take five, but whatever happens, we'll come back for you. ...*”¹

Six months later, in August 1945, Japan **surrendered**. The **war** was over. Meanwhile, Hiroo was still hiding out in the **jungle** with three other Japanese **soldiers** named Akatsu, Shimada, and Kozuka. None of them knew that the **war** had ended. They kept on hiding in the **jungle** and **fighting**. Sometimes they would even **shoot** and **kill** people.



1945: a B-17 drops leaflets
1 year in jungle

Japanese Hunt War Stragglers

MANILA (AP)—The brothers of two Japanese World War II soldiers, believed still holding out on the Philippine Island of Lubang, arrived here Monday night to join efforts to lure out the stragglers.

Dr. Toshio Onoda, older brother of former Lt. Hiroo Onoda; and Fujiji Kotsuka, younger brother of Sgt. Kinsuechi Kotsuka, were accompanied by two Japanese Welfare Ministry officials.

1959: First Japanese search party
14 years in jungle



1972: Second Japanese search party
27 years in jungle

2

People tried to tell him the war was over. In 1945 an airplane flew over and dropped leaflets in Japanese. But the Japanese in the leaflets was strange. And so Hiroo and the others had “no doubt” that this was just a **trick**.³

In 1959, after **14 years in the jungle**, a Japanese **search party** arrived with Hiroo's own brother Toshio. Through a loudspeaker he said, “*Hiroo, come out. This is your brother Toshio. ...Please come out where we can see you.*” Toshio even sang a song. But Hiroo thought that the man was not his brother, and that this was just another **trick**.⁴

In 1972, after **27 years in the jungle**, a second Japanese **search party** showed up with another of his brothers, Tadao, and his sister Chie as well. Hiroo knew it was really them. But Hiroo thought this was a **trick** by Japan to gather **intelligence** for an **invasion**. So Hiroo still did not come out.⁵

¹ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war*, page 44

² 1959: Manila(AP) (1959): *Syracuse Post Standard* page 8

³ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war* pages 76–77

⁴ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war* page 117

⁵ citerppgonoda19741771861612515649



driver ants



Luzon forest rat



scorpion

Living in the jungle was not easy. There were rats, huge numbers of ants (at least 5 kinds that could sting), huge swarms of bees, and snakes as big around as a man's leg. Sometimes Hiroo would find a scorpion under a rock that had been his pillow the night before.⁶

For food, they stole rice and sometimes even a cow from local people. They also ate bananas, and hunted wild horses and water buffalo. They built small huts to sleep in. But Hiroo said that “*during my entire thirty years on Lubang, I never once slept soundly through the night.*”⁷

By 1973, **after 28 years in the jungle**, Hiroo was all alone. Akatsu had run away after 4 years. Shimada was **shot** and **killed** after 9 years. Kozuka was shot and killed October 1972 after 27 years. Hiroo was very angry after Kozuka was killed. He ran through the forest shouting, “*I'll get them for this! I'll kill them all! Kill them, kill them, kill them!*”⁸

One reason Hiroo could not believe the war was over was because he could not believe that Japan could have lost the war. To him, Japan was the “land of the gods” and the emperor was himself a god.



Abominable Snowman/Yeti



Suzuki and Hiroo, Februry 1974, photos by Suzuki

Finally, a college dropout from Japan named Norio Suzuki decided he was going to find Hiroo Onoda and the *Abominable Snowman*. He never found the Abominable Snowman, but he did find Hiroo...or rather Hiroo found him. In the jungle, Suzuki turned around to find Hiroo behind him with a gun. Suzuki was so scared that his hands were shaking. He said, “*I'm Japanese! I'm Japanese!*” A little later Suzuki said to Hiroo, “...*The war's over. Won't you come back to Japan with me?*” Hiroo became angry and said, “*No, I won't go back! ...If you want me to go back to Japan, bring me my orders. There must be proper orders!*” Hiroo later said, “*If he had not been wearing socks, I might have shot him.*”⁹

But Suzuki and Hiroo became friends. Suzuki took some photos of Hiroo and soon returned to Japan. Norio found Hiroo's former **commander**, who was now a bookseller in Japan. He brought him to the Philippines. In March 1974, the commander read the **order** to Hiroo that all **fighting** was to stop.

⁶ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war*, pages 150–151, Chapter 9: JUNGLE LIFE

⁷ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war*, pages 132–146, Chapter 9: JUNGLE LIFE

⁸ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war*, page 177, Chapter 11: ALONE

⁹ Onoda (1974): *No Surrender: my thirty-year war*, pages 197–198

Finally, after 29 years in the jungle, Hiroo gave up his **gun** and **bullets**. And then he cried.¹⁰



March 1974

Hiroo **surrendered** to the president of the Philippines. He and the other three soldiers with him had **killed** about thirty people over the years and **wounded** about a hundred other people. But the president **pardon**ed Hiroo and let him go home.



1981, Brazil

May 21, 1996, Lubang

1999

Hiroo returned to Japan as a hero. In 1975 Hiroo moved to Brazil where he raised cattle. In 1976 he married a Japanese woman. In 1984 they moved back to Japan and started a nature camp for children to teach them how to **survive** outside in the wild. Hiroo Onoda died January 16, 2014, at 91 years old.

REFERENCES

1. book: Onoda, Hiroo: *No Surrender: my thirty-year war*. Trans. by Charles S. Terry. Annapolis, Maryland: Naval Institute Press, 1974, Bluejacket Books (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/1612515649>), ISBN 978-1-55750-663-4
2. news: Willacy, Mark and Onoda, Hiroo: Japanese holdouts fought for decades after WWII. Australian Broadcasting Corporation, December 11 2010 (URL: <http://www.abc.net.au/lateline/content/2010/s3065416.htm>)
3. newspaper: Manila(AP): Japanese Hunt War Stragglers. Syracuse Post Standard, October 20 1959 (URL: <http://newspaperarchive.com/us/new-york/syracuse/syracuse-post-standard/1959/10-20/page-8>)
4. obituary: McFadden, Robert D.: Hiroo Onoda, Soldier Who Hid in Jungle for Decades, Dies at 91. New York Times, January 17 2014b (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2014/01/18/world/asia/hiroo-onoda-imperial-japanese-army-officer-dies-at-91.html>)
5. obituary: McFadden, Robert D.: Hiroo Onoda, Japanese officer whose war lasted decades, dies. The Seattle Times, January 17 9:30pm 2014a (URL: http://seattletimes.com/html/nationworld/2022697488_onodaobitxml.html)

IV. PRESENTATION

INTRODUCE YOURSELF:	Hello! My name is _____. One day I hope I can meet _____ because _____ who? _____ why?
DRAMA:	Your friend goes into the jungle. Thirty years later, he or she still has not come back out. You go to look for him or her. What happens? What do you find?

¹⁰ McFadden (2014a): *The Seattle Times*

V. SONG

song title: *Soldier* (1994) || album: *Warriors*
 singer: Phil Driscoll || lyrics: Phil Driscoll

lyrics: <http://www.gugalyrics.com/PHIL-DRISCOLL-SOLDIER-LYRICS/88337/>
 mp3: <http://www.amazon.com/Soldier/dp/B005MGRXQG/>
 video: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=QLFS2u0kw5o>

Hints (暗示): ahead, **armor**, awhile, **battle**, best, child, courage, dead, forget, hit, lights, peace, proud, ready, rest, **soldier**, toe, tired, **warrior**, water,

weapons, wine, **wounded**

1. ...standing on the _____ line
2. finding comfort, in the _____ and the _____,
3. and your _____, still so shiny and so new
4. but you're dirty worn and _____
5. from the _____ you've been through
6. _____, keep your eyes straight _____
7. Help the _____, though it hurts you leave the _____
8. Keep your _____ and your Spirit at the _____ all the time
9. Be of _____ and conviction, _____ the mark, and
the line

10. Chorus:
11. Tonight when all the _____ go out
12. and you lie down to _____
13. Know that I'm _____ of you,
14. I know you've done your _____
15. Let Me give you _____,
16. Let Me hold you for _____
17. Yes you are a mighty _____, but don't _____,
18. no don't forget, you are still My _____

VI. GEOGRAPHY

Where are these countries?

Australia, Brunei, Burma, Cambodia, China, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, Philippines, Taiwan, Thailand, Vietnam

**VII. RIDDLE**

In **World War II**, a pilot is flying a bomber. He opens the bomb doors to drop his bombs and says, "Bombs Away!" But no bombs come out. Why?¹¹ 

¹¹  Sloane (1992): *Lateral Thinking Puzzlers*, page 8, 1.2 Bombs Away!

LESSON 20: On an Airplane

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH/中文	KK/(G)	ENGLISH/中文	KK/(G)
1.  航空器	'er,kræft (n)	7.  降落伞	'pærə,fut (n)
2.  飞机	'er,plen (n)	8.  滑翔翼	hæŋ'glaidə (n)
3.  喷射机	jet (n)	9.  飞弹	'mɪsl (n)
4.  直升机	'helɪkæptə (n)	10.  太空船	'sæb,we (n)
5.  风筝	kait (n)	11.  火箭	'rakɪt (n)
6.  气球	bəlun (n)	12.  人造卫星	'sætl,art (n)

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
13. fly	(v)	flaɪ	飞	19. fuel	(n)	'fjuəl	燃料
14. float	(v)	flɒt	浮	20. door	(n)	dɔr	门
15. take off	(v)	tek əf	起飞	21. feet	(n)	fit	英尺
16. land	(v)	laend	降落	22. meter	(n)	'mitər	公尺
17. ticket	(n)	'tɪkɪt	票	23. stairs	(n)	stɪəz	楼梯
18. seat	(n)	sit	座位	24. passenger	(n)	'pæsnɪdər	乘客

ENGLISH	(GRAMMAR)	KK	中文
25. pilot	(n)	'paɪlət	飞行员
26. copilot	(n)	'ko,paiłət	副驾驶员
27. stewardess	(n)	'stjuwədɪs	女服务员
28. flight attendant	(n)	flaɪt ə'tendənt	空服员
29. flight engineer	(n)	flaɪt ,enđʒɪ'nɪər	航空工程师
30. astronaut	(n)	'æstrə,nət	太空人

II. SENTENCES

1. Can you _____ an airplane?

2. Let's go _____ a kite.

3. Let's _____ airplane.

4. Let's _____ an airplane.

5. Are you afraid to fly _____ an airplane?

6. A _____ can fly an airplane.

7. An _____ can fly a spaceship.

8. The airplane _____ from the _____.

9. The balloon _____ across the sky.

10. He bought a _____.

11. He sat in _____.

¹Source(s) of images. images: (1996-*)Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

III. READING



On November 24, 1971, the day before Thanksgiving, a very ordinary looking man got on a Boeing 727 airplane in Oregon that was bound for Washington. The man used the name Dan Cooper when he bought the ticket. He sat in seat 18E—in the very back of the plane.



The plane took off. Almost immediately he ordered a drink. He started to smoke. Then he handed the stewardess a note that said this: "Miss, I have a bomb here and I would like you to sit by me." At first she thought he was joking. But then he opened his briefcase, and inside were red cylinders and wires.



The man demanded two things:

1. 200,000 U.S. dollars



2. Four parachutes: two back parachutes and two front parachutes.

The plane landed in Washington. The other passengers were allowed to leave the plane. The stewardess, a pilot, a copilot, and a flight engineer remained on the plane. They were ordered to take Cooper to Mexico City. But there was not enough fuel to go that far, so they had to land in Nevada first.

The plane landed in Nevada around midnight. But when it landed, there was something strange about the plane—the back door was open and the stairs had been lowered. FBI agents raided the plane. But when they did they found three things were missing: Cooper was missing; a parachute was missing; all the money was missing.

Somewhere between Washington and Nevada, Cooper apparently put on a parachute, opened the back door, lowered the stairs, and jumped out of the plane with all of the money. Cooper jumped into freezing cold air, and down below a storm was raging. The jump was made between 8:12pm and 8:17pm at 10,000 feet (3,048 meters).



A massive manhunt was started to find Cooper — dead or alive. However, the area to search was huge. And much of it was forest with no roads.

To this day, Cooper has never been found. It is the only aircraft crime in U.S. history that has not been solved. The FBI has still not closed the case. They are still open to new information. So far, the information they have fills 60 volumes.



References:

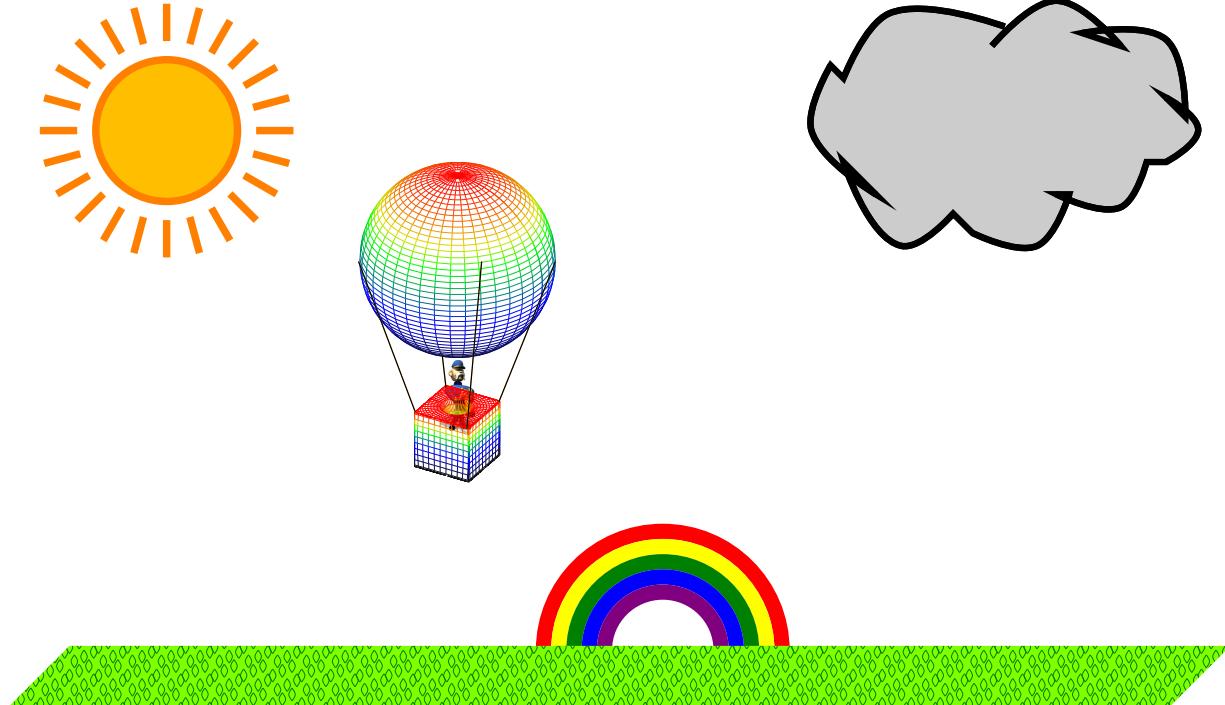
- book: Gray, Geoffrey: *SKYJACK: The Hunt for D. B. Cooper*. 1st edition. New York: Crown Publishing Group, 2011 (URL: <http://books.google.com.tw/books?vid=ISBN0307451313>)
- article: Staff, NPR: 'Skyjack': The Unsolved Case Of D.B. Cooper's Escape. National Public Radio, September 25 2011 (URL: <http://www.npr.org/2011/09/25/140216653/>)
- news: Thomas, Pierre: D.B. Cooper Exclusive: Did Niece Provide Key Evidence? ABC Nightline, August 3 2011 (URL: <http://abcnews.go.com/US/db-cooper-exclusive-niece-provide-key-evidence/story?id=14219052>)

IV. VIDEO movie: *The pursuit of DB Cooper***V. DISCUSSION** 

In 2011, a woman named Marla Cooper came forward and told ABC News that DB Cooper is her uncle, Lynn Doyle Cooper. Watch these news videos. What do you think?

 <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=aWOC1NAb6Jo>
 <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=NRDEF6fJcko>

1. In 2011, a woman named Marla Cooper told ABC News that DB Cooper is her _____, Lynn Doyle Cooper ("LD").
2. She said that he left on a trip to supposedly go _____ hunting.
3. When LD came back, he said that he had been in a _____.
4. LD was in the _____ War.
5. LD used to work as a _____.
6. LD liked _____ comic books, who often used a _____.

VI. LISTEN AND DRAW 

²sources.  Greenhoe (2011):

VII. SONG

song title:	<i>Learning to Fly</i> (1987)	album:	<i>A Momentary Lapse of Reason</i>
singer:	Pink Floyd	lyrics:	Pink Floyd
lyrics:	http://www.azlyrics.com/lyrics/pinkfloyd/learningtofly.html		
mp3:	http://www.amazon.com/gp/product/B0011WBV1K/		
video:	http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=xb-Nacm-pKc		

Hints (暗示): back, black, earth, escape, eyes, fast, field, flight, fly, home, learning, senses, skies, standing, stone, thought, tongue, try

1. Into the _____, a ribbon of _____
 2. Stretched to the point of no turning _____
 3. A _____ of fancy on a windswept _____
 4. _____ alone my _____ reeled
 5. A fatal attraction is holding me _____,
 6. How can I _____ this irresistible grasp?
 7. Can't keep my _____ from the circling _____
 8. _____ -tied and twisted, just an _____ -bound misfit, I
 9. _____ is forming on the tips of my _____
 10. Unheeded warnings, I _____, I _____ of everything
 11. No navigator to find my way _____
 12. Unladen, empty and turned to _____
 13. A soul in tension – that's _____ to _____
 14. Condition grounded but determined to _____
 15. Can't keep my _____ from the circling _____
 16. _____ -tied and twisted just an _____ -bound misfit, I
- ...

VIII. JOKE

A doctor, a scientist, a student, and an old pilot were flying in an airplane. Suddenly, the airplane engines stopped, and the plane started going down. There were three parachutes in the airplane.

The doctor immediately took the first **parachute** and said, "I save many people's lives! I should get a parachute!" And then he jumped out of the airplane.

The scientist immediately took the second **parachute** and said, "I am the smartest man in the world! I should get a parachute!" And then he jumped out of the airplane.

The old pilot then said to the student, "I am very old and have already had many many happy years. You are still young and have your whole life yet to live. You take the last parachute!"

But the student said, "Don't worry sir! The smartest man in the world just jumped out of the airplane with my backpack!"³

IX. GEOGRAPHY

Where are these _____? Arizona, California, Colorado, Idaho, Montana, Neveda, New Mexico, Oklahoma, Oregon, Utah, Washington, Wyoming

³reference: http://www.funny.com/cgi-bin/WebObjects/Funny.woa/wa/funny?fn=CHB2V&Funny_Jokes=Parachutes



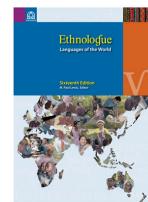
LESSON 21: Languages

I. VOCABULARY

ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文	ENGLISH	(grammar)	KK	中文
1. language	(n)	'læŋgwɪdʒ	语言	11. tone	(n)	ton	声
2. phone	(n)	fon	声音	12. tonal	(adj)	'tonl	有声的
3. sound	(n)	səʊnd	声音	13. nontonal	(adj)	'nan,tonl	无声的
4. phoneme	(n)	'fɔnim	音位	14. alphabet	(n)	'ælfə bɛt	字母
5. consonant	(n)	'kɔnsənənt	子音	15. script	(n)	skript	字母
6. vowel	(n)	'vjuəl	母音	16. grapheme	(n)	'græfim	字位
7. voiced	(adj)	vɔɪst	浊音的	17. character	(n)	'kærɪktər	字位
8. voiceless	(adj)	'vɔɪsl̩s	清音的	18. glyph	(n)	glif	字形
9. syllable	(n)	'sɪləbl	音节	19. ideograph	(n)	i'dre,græf	形意文字
10. phonetics	(n)	fo'nɛtɪcs	语音系	20. pictograph	(n)	'pɪktə,græf	象形文字

II. DISCUSSION

1. As of 2009, there were a total of about _____ “living languages” in the world. You can find out more about them here: Lewis, M. Paul, editor: *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*. 16th edition. Dallas: Intl Academic Bookstore, 2009 (URL: <http://www.ethnologue.com/>), ISBN 1556712162



2. In 2008, a new language called *Koro* was found in _____. You can read more about it here: Wilford, John Noble: Hunting One Africa/India/Indonesia Language, Stumbling Upon Another. The New York Times, October 11 2010 (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/10/12/science/12language.html>)



3. People on the islands in the Pacific ocean speak about _____ different languages. Scientists at Ackland University have used computer analysis on 400 of these languages and say many of these people, including Somoans, originally came from _____ thousands of years ago.

http://www.samoaobserver.ws/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=3573%3Asamoans-may-hail&Itemid=1

4. English has about _____ phonemes. Of these, _____ are consonants and _____ are vowels.¹

¹  Association (1999): *Handbook of the International Phonetic Association*... pages 41–43 (American English)  Prasad (2008): *A Course in Linguistics* page 35

abc	example	IPA	voiced?
1. p	as in pear	p	✓
2. b	as in bear	b	✓
3. t	as in top	t	✓
4. d	as in door	d	✓
5. k	as in kite	k	
6. g	as in girl	g	✓
7. ch	as in cheese	tʃ	
8. j	as in jump	dʒ	✓
9. m	as in mouse	m	✓
10. n	as in net	n	✓
11. ng	as in sing	ŋ	✓
12. f	as in fish	f	

abc	example	IPA	voiced?
13. v	as in vet	v	✓
14. th	as in math	θ	
15. th	as in th	ð	✓
16. s	as in socks	s	
17. z	as in zero	z	✓
18. sh	as in shoe	ʃ	
19. z	as in azure	ʒ	✓
20. h	as in hat	h	
21. r	as in rug	ɹ	✓
22. y	as in you	j	✓
23. w	as in wait	w	✓
24. l	as in late	l	✓

Of the vowel sounds, there are about monophthongs (单元音)
and about diphthongs (双元音):

abc	example	IPA	voiced?
1. ee	as in he	i	✓
2. e	as in bayed	e	✓
3. e	as in red	ɛ	✓
4. a	as in cat	æ	✓
5. i	as in lid	ɪ	✓
6. ir	as in bird	əɪ	✓
7. oo	as in good	ʊ	✓
8. ue	as in glue	u	✓

abc	example	IPA	voiced?
9. oa	as in goat	o	✓
10. u	as in bud	ʌ	✓
11. a	as in father	ɑ	✓
12. i	as in kite	aɪ	✓
13. ow	as in now	aʊ	✓
14. oy	as in boy	ɔɪ	✓
15. a	as in above	ə	✓

16. Chinese has about phonemes. Of these, about _____ are **consonants**
and about _____ are **vowels**.

pinyin	zhuyin	IPA	description
1. b	ㄅ	b	as the b in boy
2. c	ㄅ	tʂ	as the ts in cats and hats
3. d	ㄉ	ɖ	as the d in day
4. f	ㄈ	f	as the f in fade , fin , and fun
5. g	ㄍ	ɣ	the hard g sound in gather , get , give , and gun
6. h	ㄏ	x	the h sound in ha ha or happy
7. j	ㄐ	dʐ	the j sound in jay or the g sound in gym
8. k	㄀	kʰ	the k sound in kangaroo or the c sound in cap
9. l	ㄌ	l	the l sound in label , lime , and low
10. m	ㄇ	m	the m sound in mayor , meet , mow , and mute
11. n	ㄋ	n	the n sound in name , new , nine , and no
12. p	ㄆ	p	the p sound in past , pen , pine , and prune
13. q	ㄆ	tʃ	the ch sound in chew
14. r	ㄮ	ɿ	the r sound in ran , red , and ripe
15. s	ㄟ	s	the s sound in sand , send , since , and sun
16. t	ㄊ	tʰ	the t sound in talk , tent , tick , and tent
17. w	ㄨ	w	the w sound in walk , went , and win
18. x	ㄒ	ʂ	a semi-shrill form of sh (try it smiling)

19.	y	j	the y sound in yellow
20.	z	dʒ	the z sound in zebra

pinyin	zhuyin	IPA	description
1. a	ㄚ	ɑ	as the a in father
2. e	ㄞ	ɛ	the <i>uh</i> sound as the ai in said
3. i	ㄧ	i	the <i>ee</i> sound as the ee in see
4. o	ㄡ	o	the short <i>oh</i> sound as the o in mow
5. u	ㄨ	ʊ	as the o sound in do
6. v	ㄩ	u	the ew sound, with lips rounded, similar to the ew sound in ewe (female sheep).

7. Chinese has about _____ phones (sounds).

[40/403/4030](#)

8. English has about _____ phones (sounds).

[158/1583/15,831/158,316](#)

This is from Chris Barker at New York University's Department (系) of Linguistics (语言学). He used the BEEP Pronouncing Dictionary (BEEP发音字典) which apparently at the time contained "just over" 16,000 words, but now contains over 250,000 words. It can be freely downloaded from <http://svr-www.eng.cam.ac.uk/comp.speech/Section1/Lexical/beep.html> Chris Barker wrote a computer program (电脑程式) to find all the syllables in the dictionary.



9. Here are some **pictographs** from the U.S. National Park Service. Can you guess what any of them mean?

10. In English, all these **glyphs** represent _____ grapheme (character):

[the same/different](#)

Ⓐ, Ⓑ, Ⓒ, Ⓓ, Ⓔ, Ⓕ

11. In Chinese, all these **glyphs** represent _____ grapheme (character):

[the same/different](#)

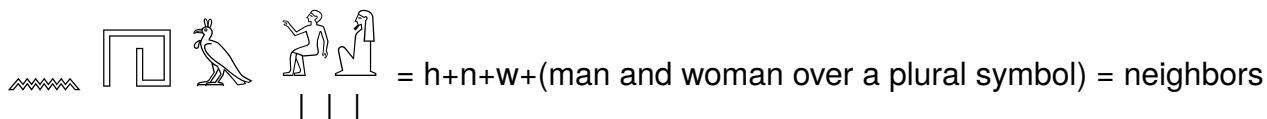
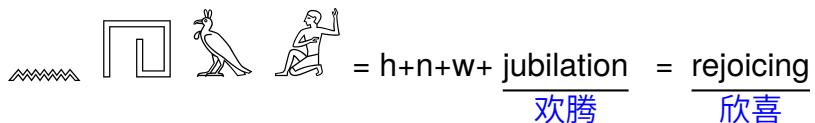
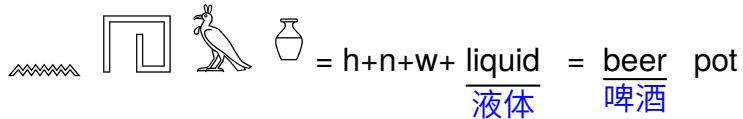
山, 山,

12. The English **script** is mostly a _____ language. The Chinese **script** is mostly an _____ phonetic/ideographic

language.

phonetic/ideographic

13. Egyptian Hieroglyphics combines (结合) phonetic and ideographic graphemes.²



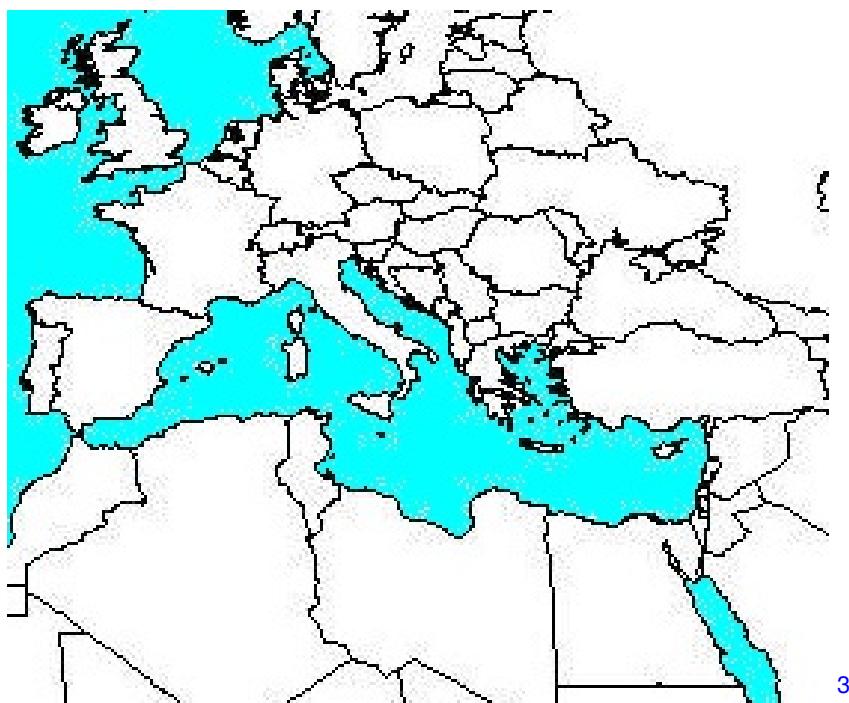
III. DISCUSSION

What Alphabets are these? Hints Arabic, English, Egyptian Hieroglyphics, [Greek](#) (希腊语), [Hebrew](#) (希伯来语), Latin, Tagalog,

- ΑΒΓΔΕΖΗΘΙΚΛΜΝΞΟΠΡΣΤΥΦΧΨΩ αβγδεζηθικλμνξοπρστυφχψω
 - ABCDEFIGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
 - בְּסַעֲפִיצָקְרָשָׁתּוֹ אֶבְגָּדָה וְחַתִּיכְלָמָןּ
 - درزש شخص ظل عingu ابة تشجحد
 - נְבָנָה וְתָמֵדָה כְּלָמָןּ
 - 

IV. GEOGRAPHY

Hints (暗示): England, France, Spain, Italy, Greece, Egypt, Mediterranean Sea, Red Sea



² Atiya (2006): *Ancient Egypt*, page 52

³<http://geography.about.com/library/blank/blxeurope.htm>

V. READING

Thousands of years ago, Egypt (埃及) was the most advanced country in the world. They were skilled in farming and irrigation (灌溉). They invented a calendar (月历) that is very similar to the one still used today. They built huge pyramids. But probably their greatest invention was the invention of writing. Starting about 5000 years ago, people in Egypt wrote in a script called hieroglyphics (象形文字). Over time, Egypt was filled with messages written in this language. Messages were written on walls and on sheets made out of reeds (芦苇). But over time, less and less people knew how to read them. Finally by the 5th century, even though the messages were still all over Egypt, no one knew what they said. The knowledge had become completely lost.



4



Starting in the 5th century (世纪) and for the next 1400 years, people tried and tried to again understand what the messages said. But everyone failed. 5 Still no one could read the thousands of now secret messages written all over Egypt.

Finally, it was a soldier, not a scientist, who made the greatest discovery (发现) of all. In 1799 in the town of Rosetta, a French soldier found a very special stone. On the stone was something written in three scripts: Hieroglyphics, "Demotic", and Greek (希腊文). Greek was well understood. And it had good news in it — it said that all the three languages said the same thing. Why was that good news? It was good news because now maybe someone could use the Greek to figure out (想出) hieroglyphics.



Jean-François Champollion was from France. His father was a very poor book seller. When Jean-François was a boy, he was taught Greek and Latin. He later studied several other languages. When he was nine years old, The Rosetta stone was discovered. Two years later, he announced that he would be the one to decipher (解码) hieroglyphics.⁶ Champollion loved languages. He loved history (历史). And he loved work. He was determined to understand the Rosetta stone. He worked so hard that he finally had what was maybe a nervous breakdown (精神崩溃). He had to rest. But he did not like to rest. He felt rest was boring. In fact, while he was resting, he asked his brother to send him a book about Chinese grammar.

Finally, Champollion stopped “resting” and went back to work on the Rosetta stone. People had thought that the many little pictures in Hieroglyphics were **ideographic**. But it was finally discovered that they were a combination of **phonetic** and **ideographic** characters.⁷ Finally, he was able to

⁴ Loon (1921): *The Story of Mankind*, pages 17–18

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Papyrus_Ani_curs_hiero.jpg

⁵ http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Sanzio_01.jpg

⁶ Weissbach (1999): *FIDELIO Magazine VIII [1999]*

⁷ Loon (1921): *The Story of Mankind*, page 20

read the hieroglyphics. Now, after hundreds and hundreds of years, people could once again begin to read what had been written thousands of years ago in Egypt. In France, Champollion became a national hero (英雄). But he was a tired hero. And on March 4, 1832, when he was only 41 years old, he died.

APPENDIX A

EXTRA

A.1 The Outhouse

A father had three sons. They lived in a small house next to a hill. At the bottom of the hill there was a river. The house had no bathroom inside, but there was an outhouse on top of the hill. One night, one of the sons sneaked up the hill, and pushed the outhouse down the hill and into the river.

The next day the father called his three sons. He asked them, "Which one of you pushed the outhouse down the hill and into the river?" The first son answered, "It was not me, Father!" The second son answered, "It was not me, Father!" The third son answered, "It was not me, Father!"

So the father decided to tell his sons a story. "There was once a boy named George Washington. One day, he chopped down his father's cherry tree. The next day his father asked him, 'Did you chop down my cherry tree?' Little George did not lie, but told his father the truth saying, 'Yes Father! It was me! I chopped down the cherry tree!' But because little George was honest, his father did not punish him.

Then the father asked his three sons again, "Which one of you pushed the outhouse down the hill and into the river?" The first son answered, "It was not me, Father!" The second son answered, "It was not me, Father!" The third son answered, "It was me, Father! I did it! I pushed the outhouse down the hill and into the river!"

The father immediately picked up a stick and punished his son.

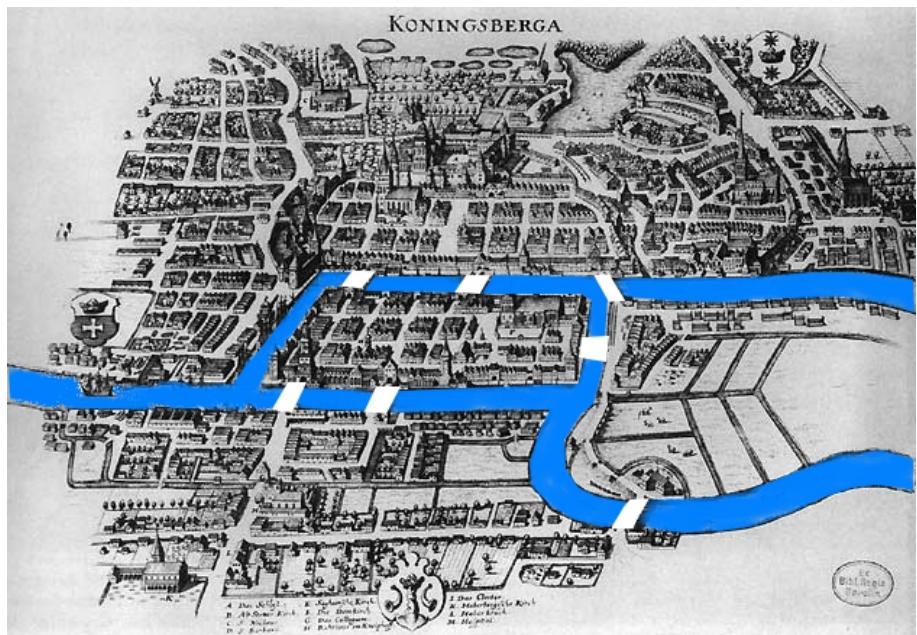
The son said, "I don't understand. You said Little George was honest and so his father did not punish him. I was also honest but you punished me!"

The father said, "Ah! But Little George's father was not in the cherry tree when George chopped it down!"

A.2 The Seven Bridges of Königsberg

1

You are in a race in the city of Königsberg, Prussia (普鲁士) in the year 1735. You have to run over each of the 7 bridges, but you can only cross each bridge one time. Can you do it?



The Seven Bridges of Königsberg problem is a very famous problem in

It was solved by Leonhard _____ in the year English/shoe design/mathematics

He proved that it _____ possible to cross the bridges as described above.

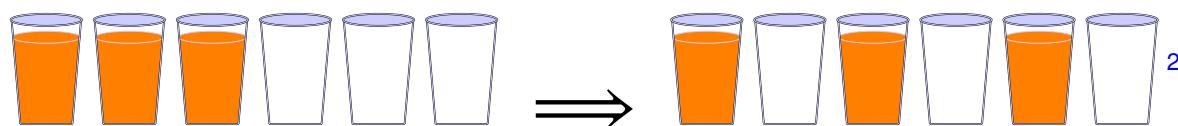
Edison/Einstein/Euler

1535/1735/1935/2005

is/is not

A.3 Six Glasses

There are six glasses lined up on a table.
The three on the left are full of orange juice.
The three on the right are empty.
By just moving one glass, can you make it so there is one empty glass after each full glass?



¹ [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seven_Bridges_of_Königsberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seven_Bridges_of_K%C3%B6nigsberg)

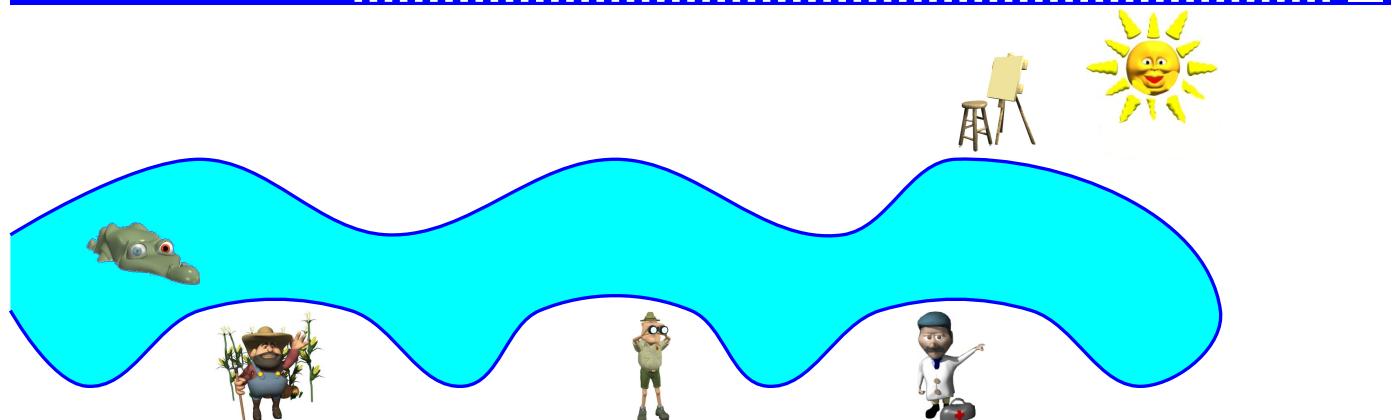
<http://mathforum.org/isaac/problems/bridges1.html> Map adapted by Daniel J. Greenhoe from public domain image at

http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Image-Koenigsberg,_Map_by_Merian-Erben_1652.jpg using GIMP 2.6.11

²images: Greenhoe:

A.4 River Cross

VI. LISTEN AND DRAW



VII. RIDDLE

A zookeeper, a _____, and a _____ are standing at a _____.⁴ Each has one or two _____ with him. The zookeeper has a _____. The farmer has a _____ and a pig. The vet has a dog and a _____. They all want to cross the _____. The only way to cross the river is by a small _____ at the _____. But there are some rules:

1. Only people (not animals) can _____ the raft.
2. At _____ two can be on the raft at one time (one person, two people, or one person and one animal).
3. The lion cannot be left with anyone without the _____ also being there.
4. The farmer cannot be left with the dog or the cat without the _____ also being there.
5. The vet cannot be left with the cow or the pig without the _____ also being there.

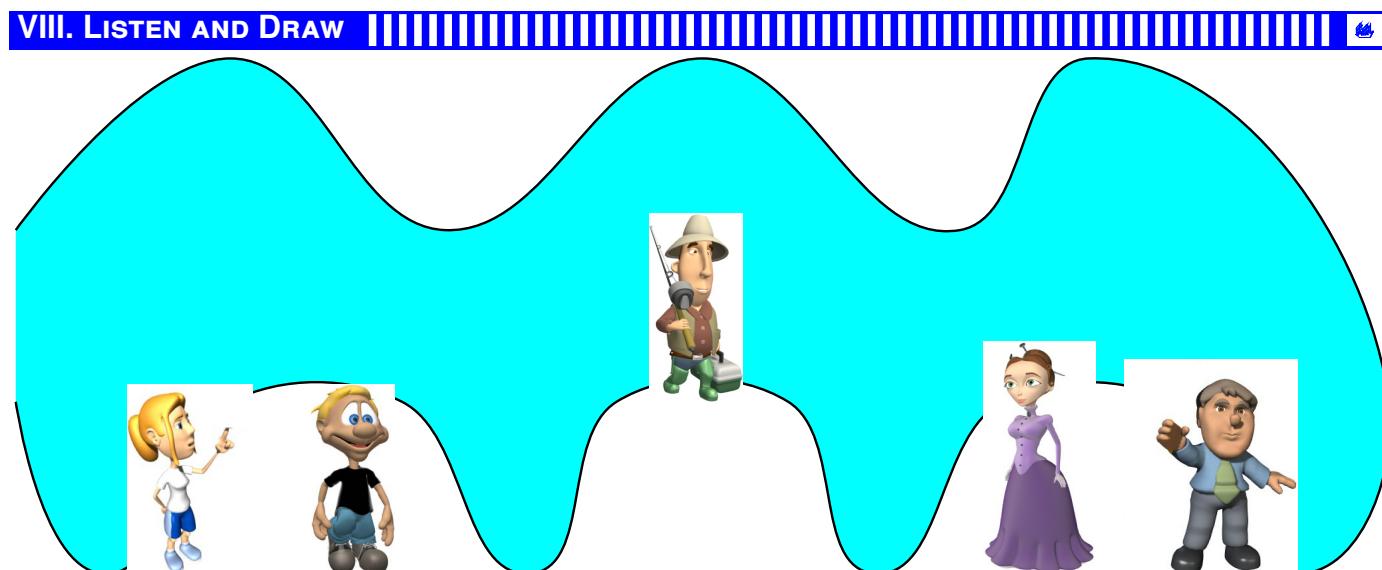
How can they all _____ across the river?

P

⁴riddle adapted from <http://www.robmathiowetz.com/>

1.	The _____ and _____ cross over; the _____ returns.
2.	The _____ and COW _____ cross over; the _____ and _____ return.
3.	The _____ and _____ cross over; the _____ returns.
4.	The _____ and _____ cross over; the _____ returns.
5.	The _____ and LION _____ cross over; the _____ returns.
6.	The _____ and _____ cross over; the _____ returns.
7.	The _____ and _____ cross over; the _____ and _____ return.
8.	The _____ and _____ cross over; the _____ returns.
9.	The _____ and _____ cross over.

A.5 River Cross 2



5

IX. RIDDLE

A family with a mother, father, one son and one daughter come to a river. There is no bridge. But there is a fisherman there with a very small boat. The boat can only carry one adult, one child, or two children. The fisherman agrees to let them use his boat; but how can they all get across the river and still return the boat to the fisherman?⁶

⁵ graphics: Greenhoe (2012); (1996–*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>)

1.	The	son and daughter son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the _____ returns.
2.	The	son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the _____ returns.
3.	The	son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the _____ returns.
4.	The	son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the _____ returns.
5.	The	son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the _____ returns.
6.	The	son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the _____ returns.
7.	The	son and daughter/mother/father/fisherman	over, cross/crosses	the fisherman _____ returns.

A.6 Peter Piper

Peter Piper picked a peck
 彼得 吹笛者 采 一个 配克
 of pickled peppers .
 酱制的 辣椒

How many pickled peppers
 多少 酱制的 辣椒
 did Peter Piper pick ?
 彼得 吹笛者 采



⁶adapted from <http://brainden.com/crossing-river.htm>

⁷ (1996-*) Animation Factory (<http://www.animationfactory.com/>) (4945498)

A.7 The Race on Horseback

Two men lived in a small town. Each of them owned a horse and rode their horses everyday. But the two men didn't like each other very much.

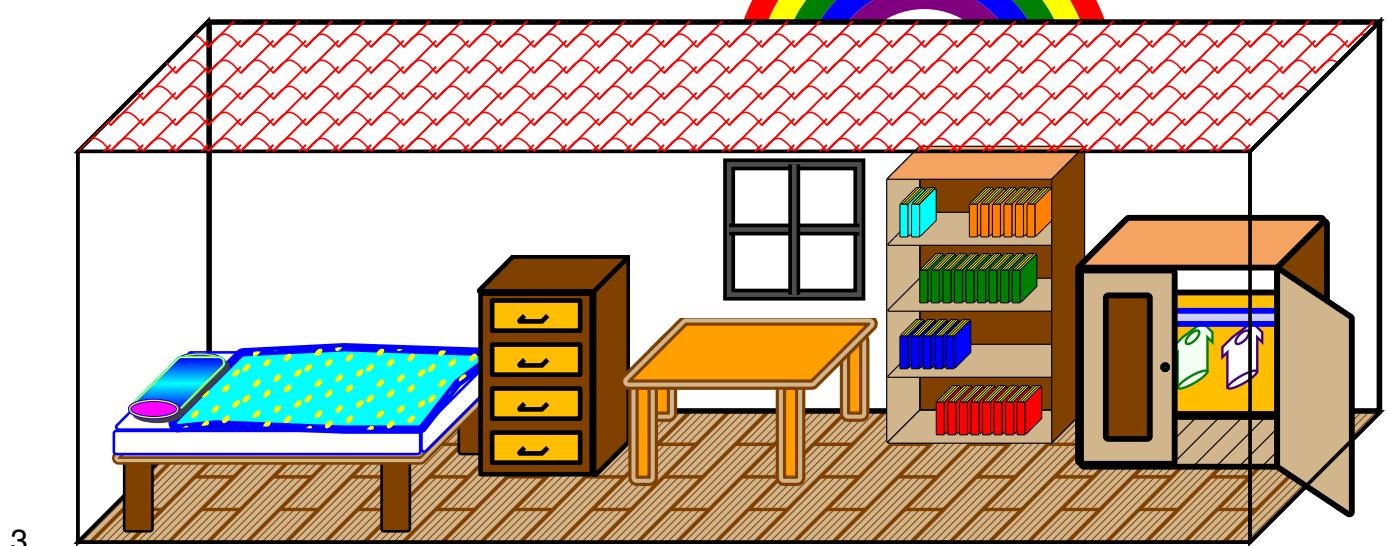
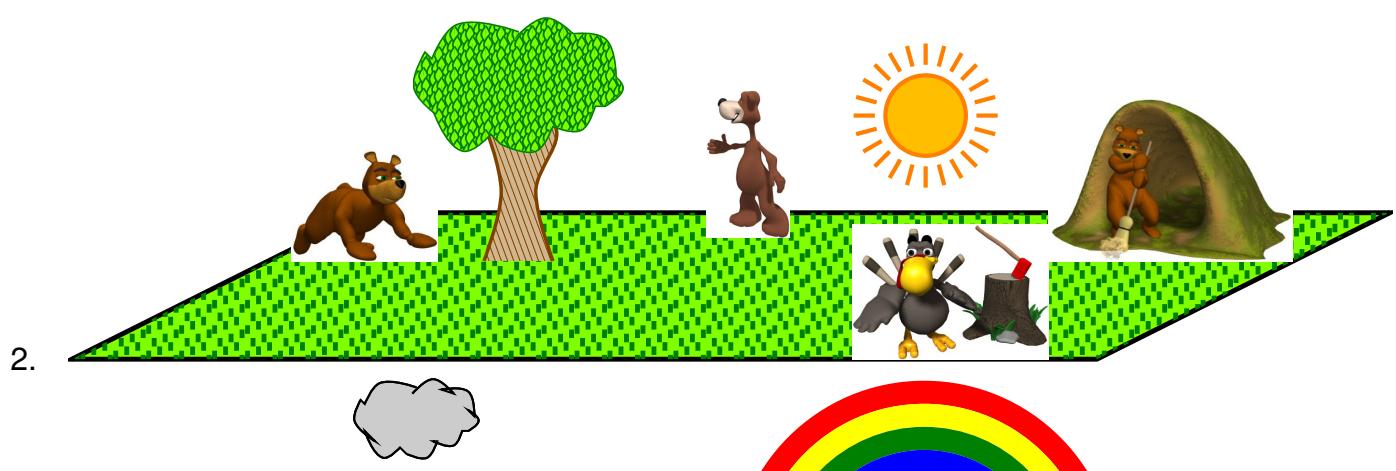
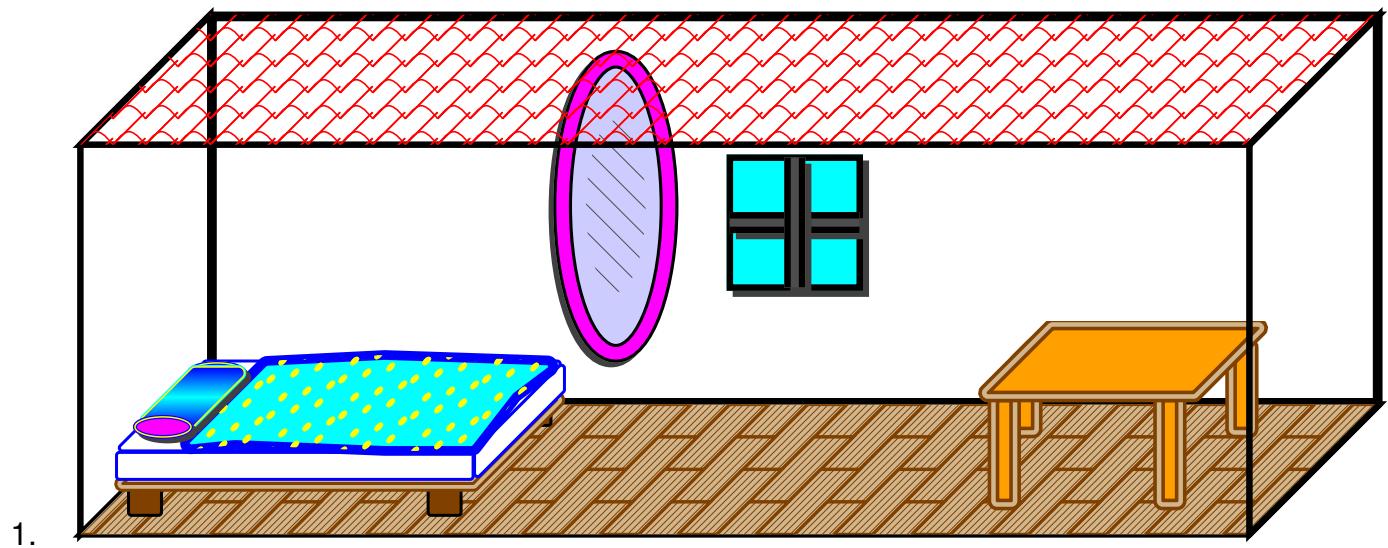
One day while out riding their horses, they found themselves riding down the same road. Both of them immediately stopped. They both got down from their horses. The first man said to the second, "Let's have a race on horseback back to town. Whosever horse finishes last has to move out of town." The second man replied, "That's not fair. We both know that your horse is faster." Then the first man said, "OK, then whoever horse finishes first has to move out of town." They both agreed. Then immediately they both jumped on the horses and rode as fast as they could back to town. Why? Answer: Each man jumped on the _____ horse.

A.8 Running from the Bear

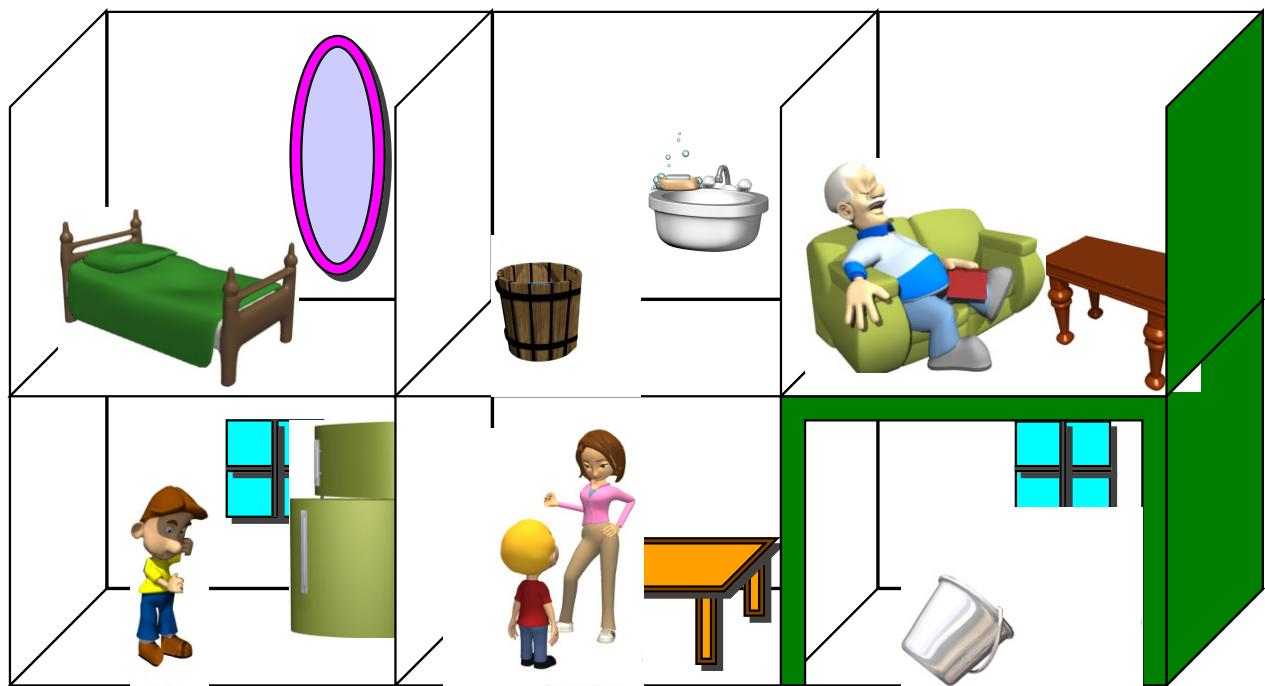
Two men are walking through the forest. Suddenly, up ahead, they see a huge bear. The bear starts running towards them. The first man takes a pair of running shoes out of his backpack, and puts them on. The second man says to him, "You can't run faster than a bear." The first man answers, "I don't need to run faster than _____; I only need to run faster than _____".⁸



A.9 Listen and Draw



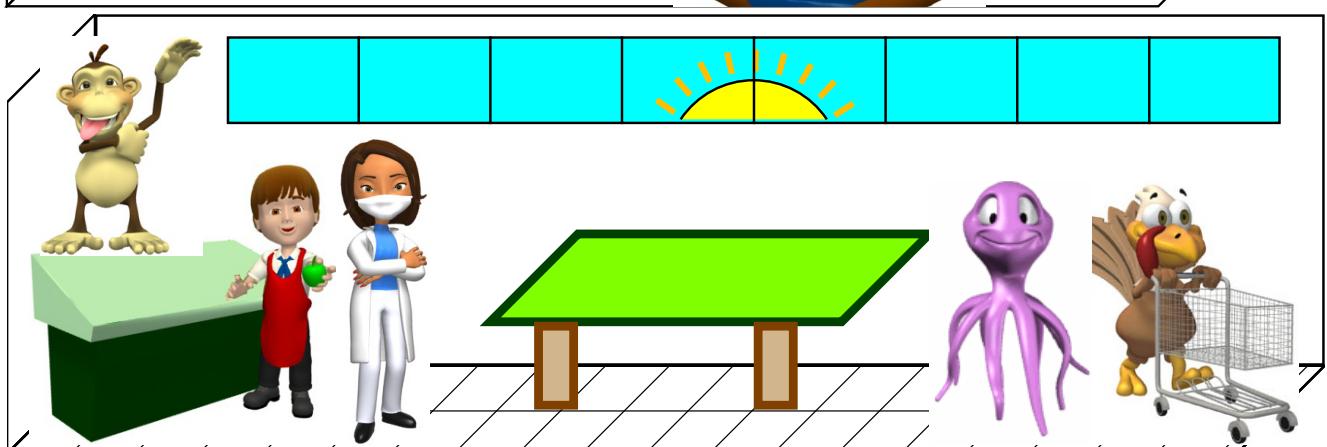
4.

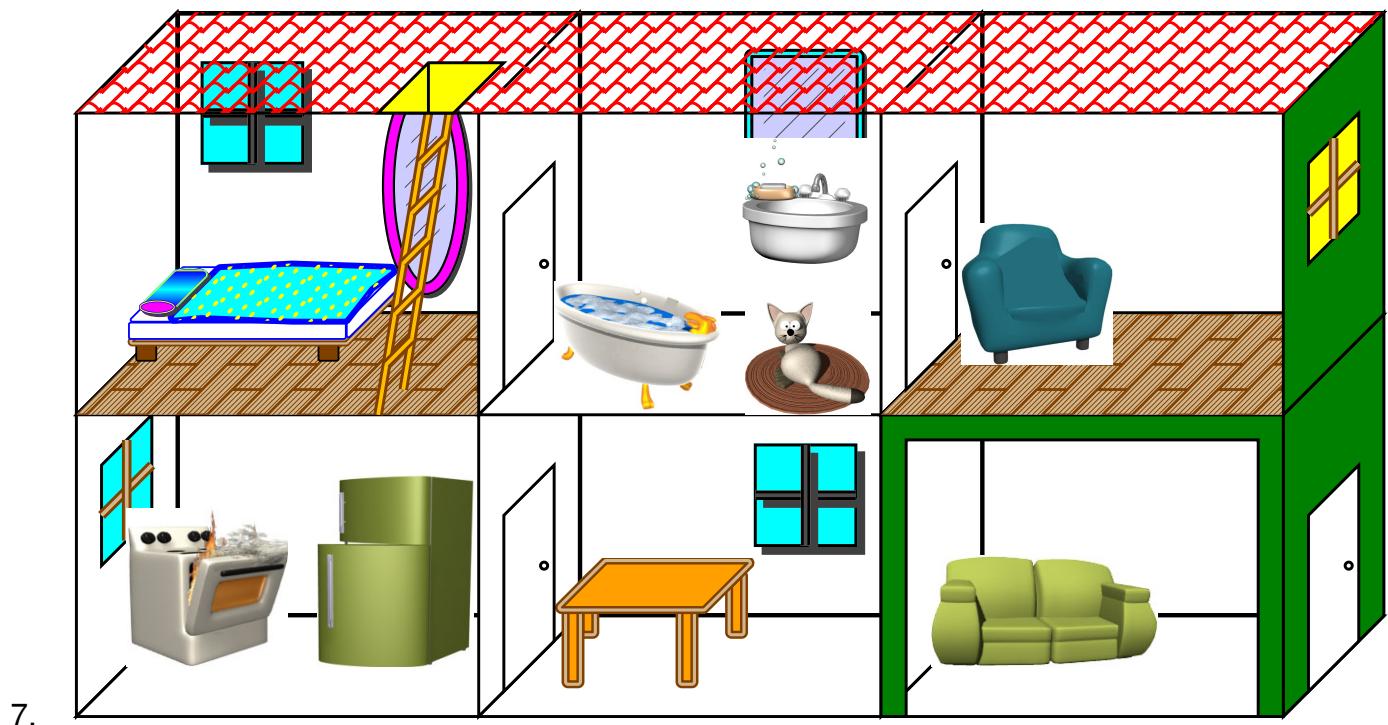


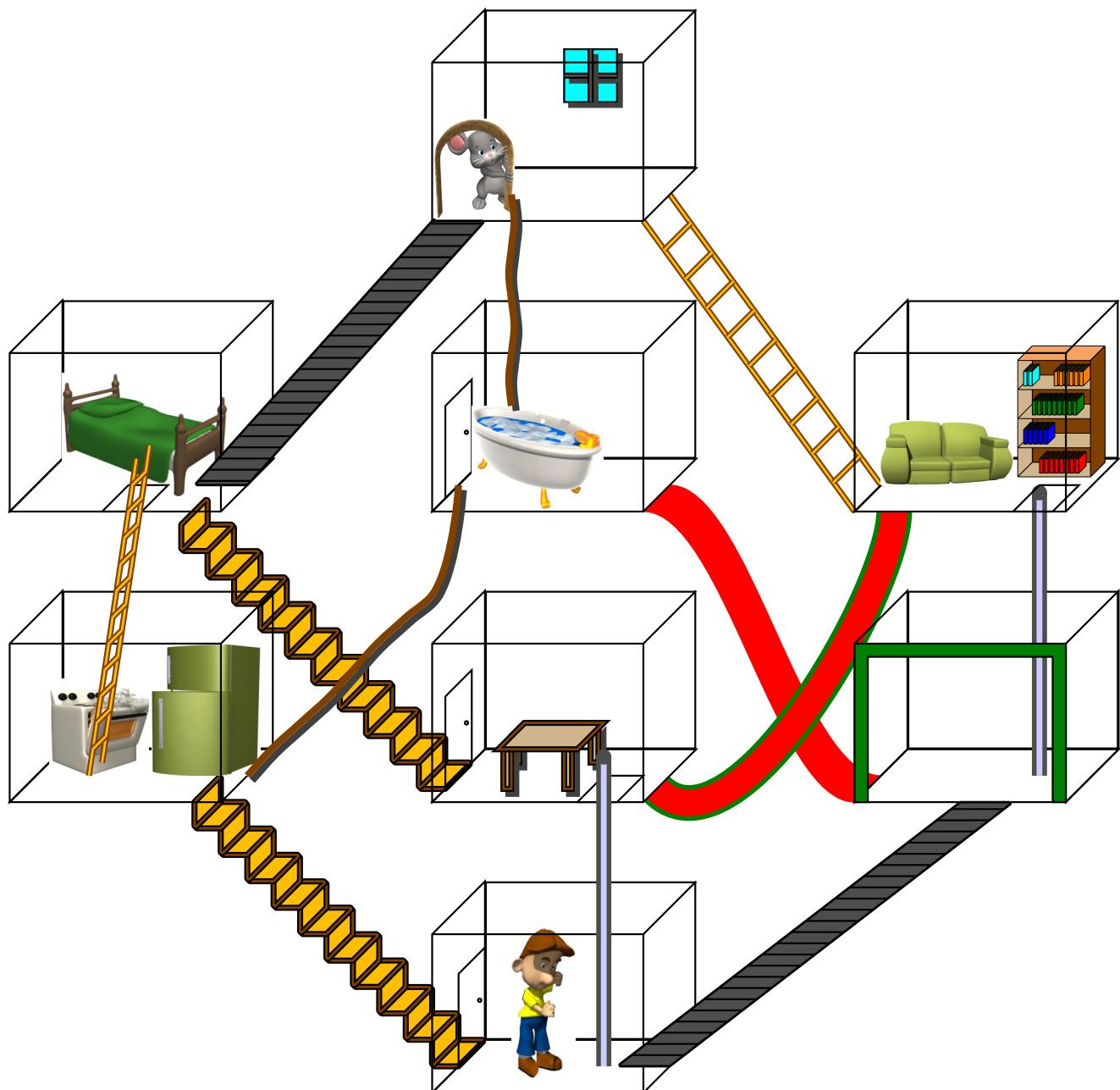
5.



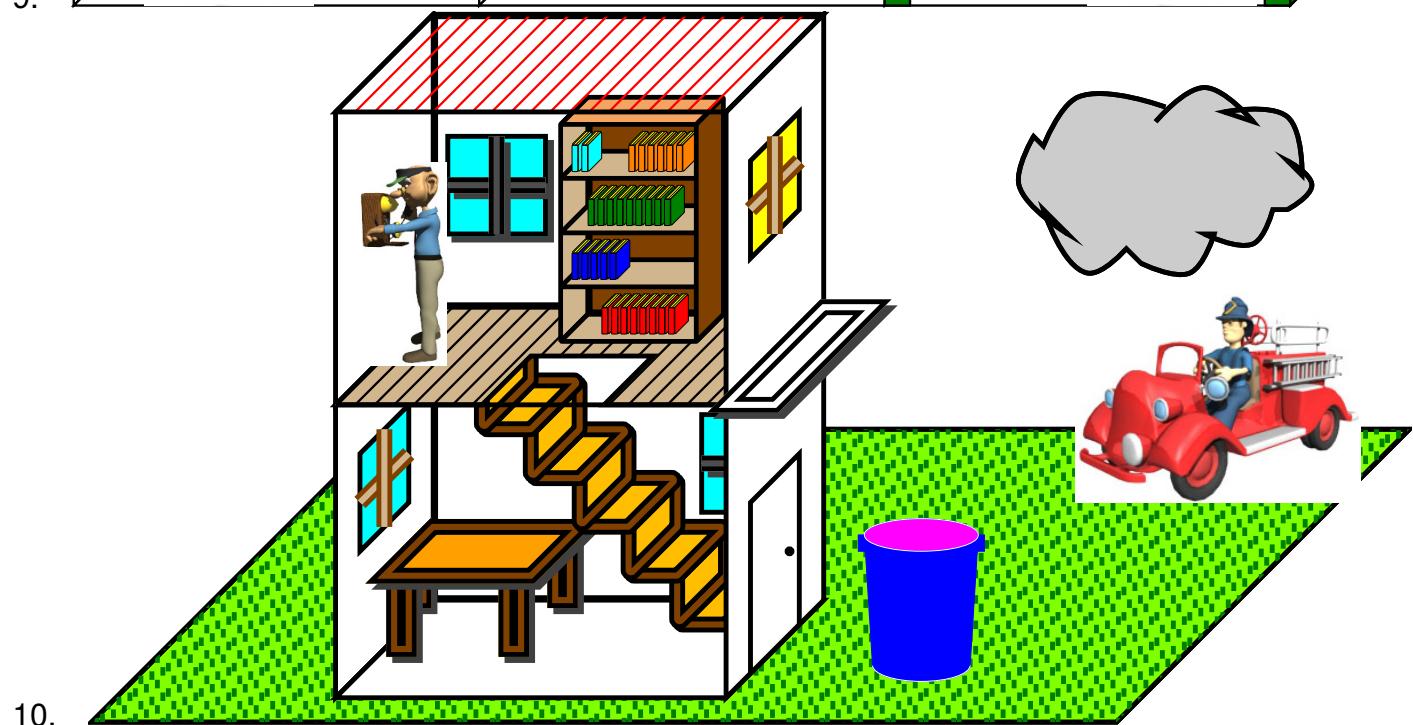
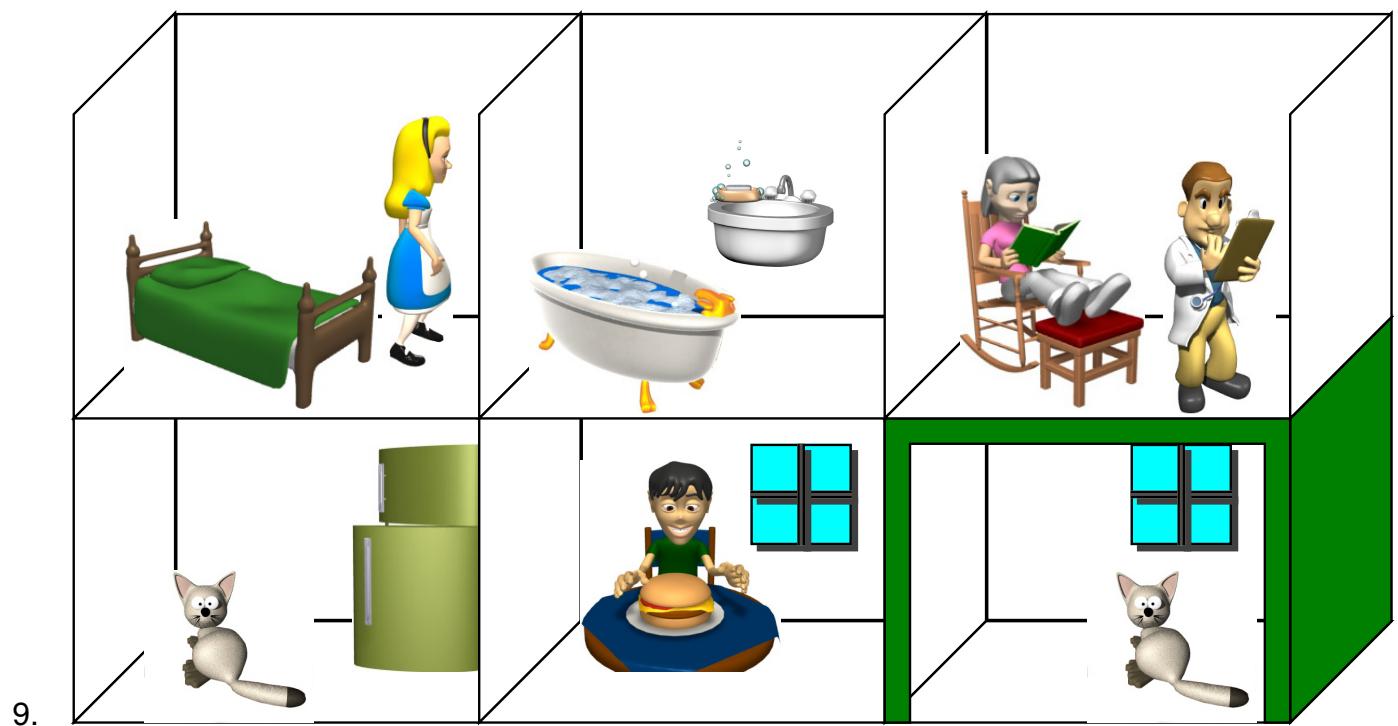
6.

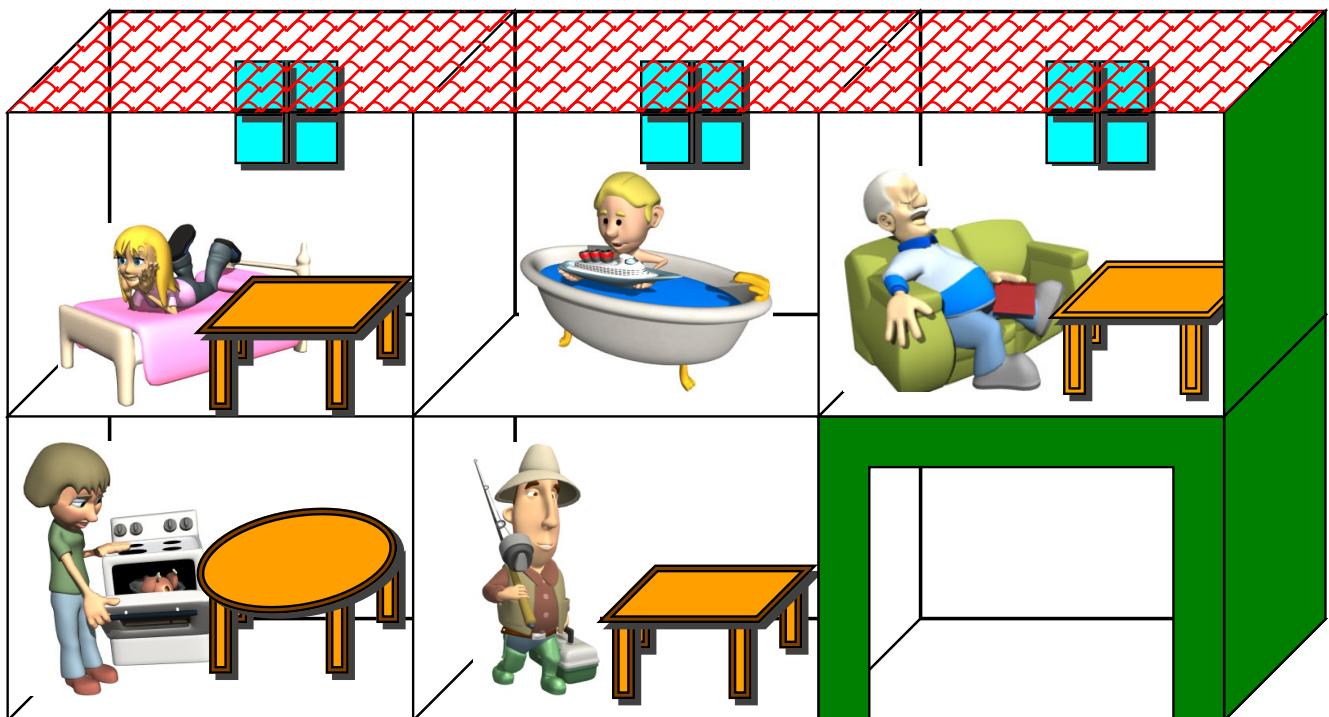




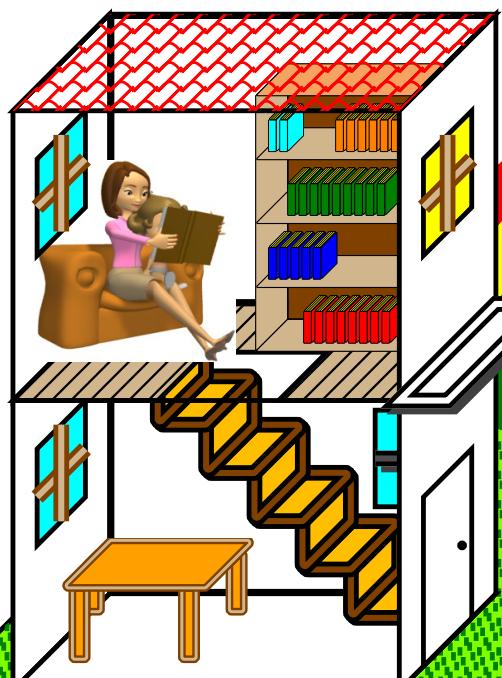


8.

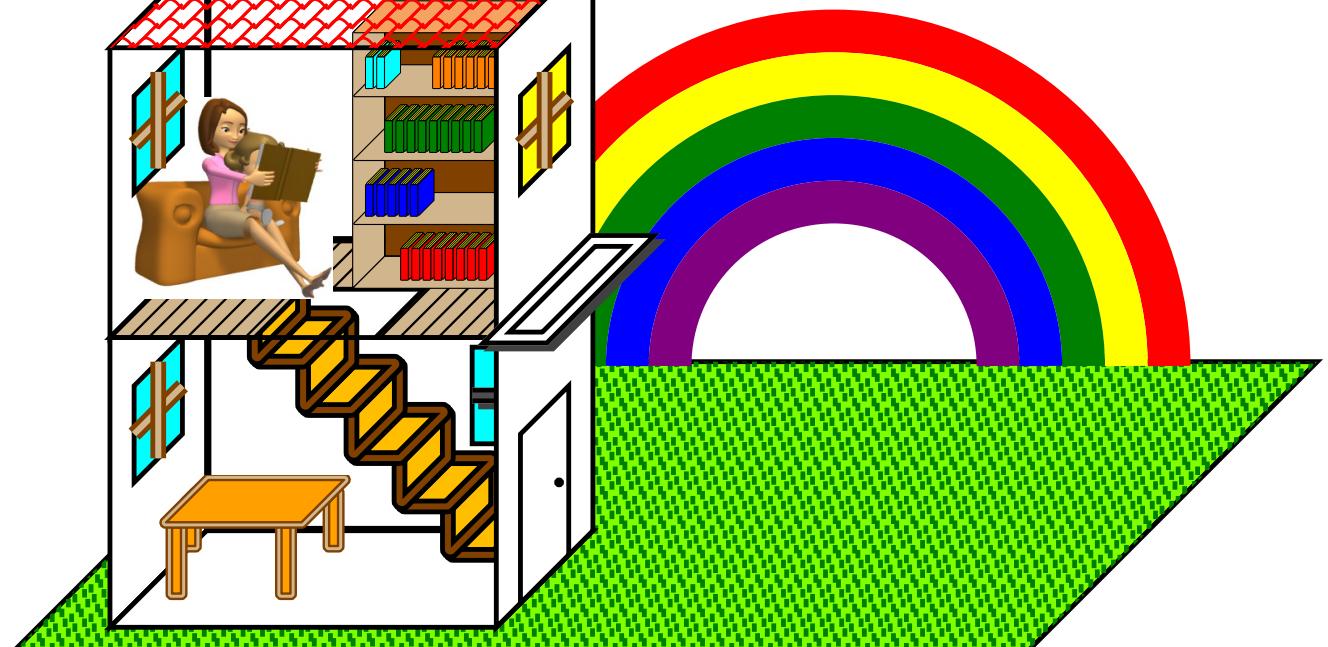


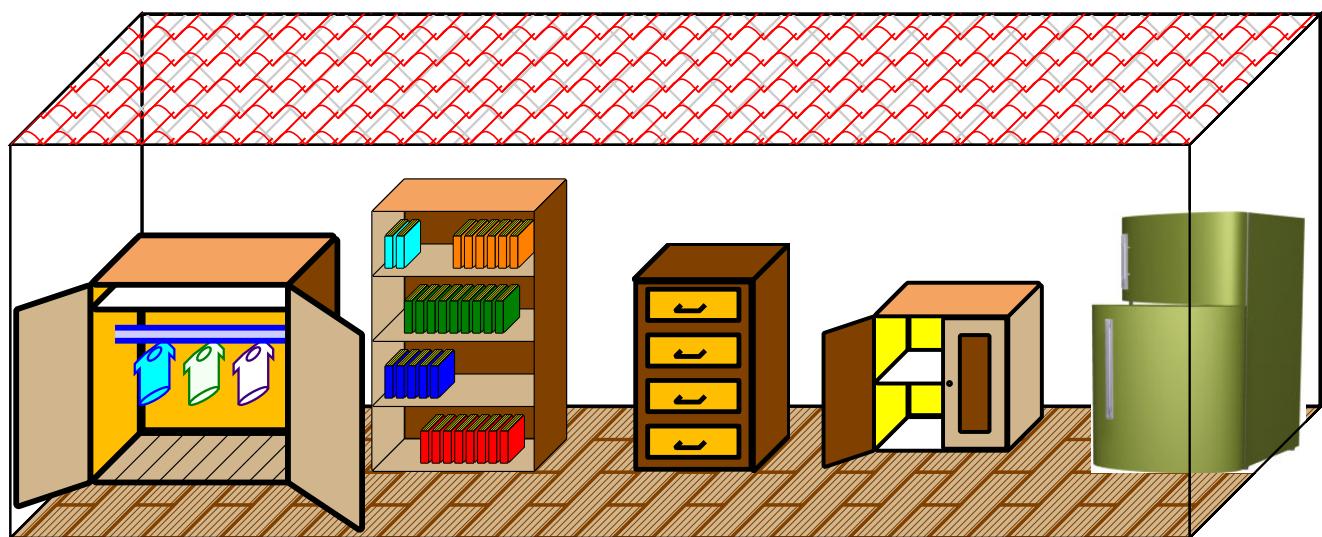


11.

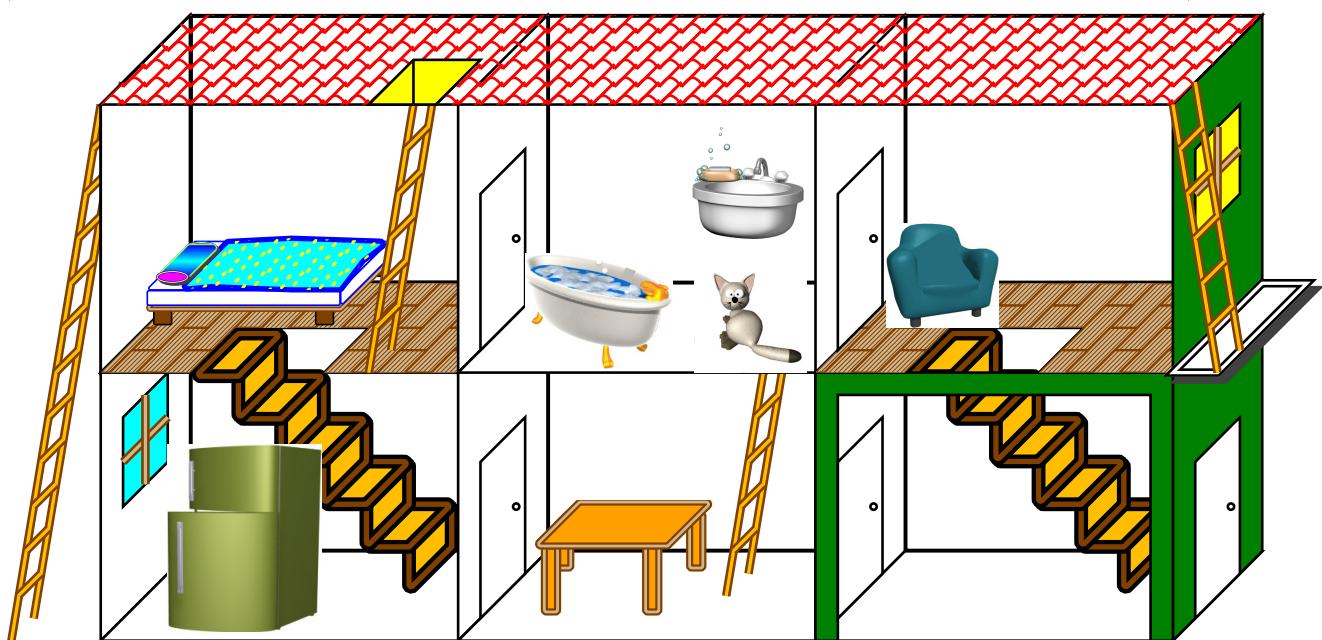


12.

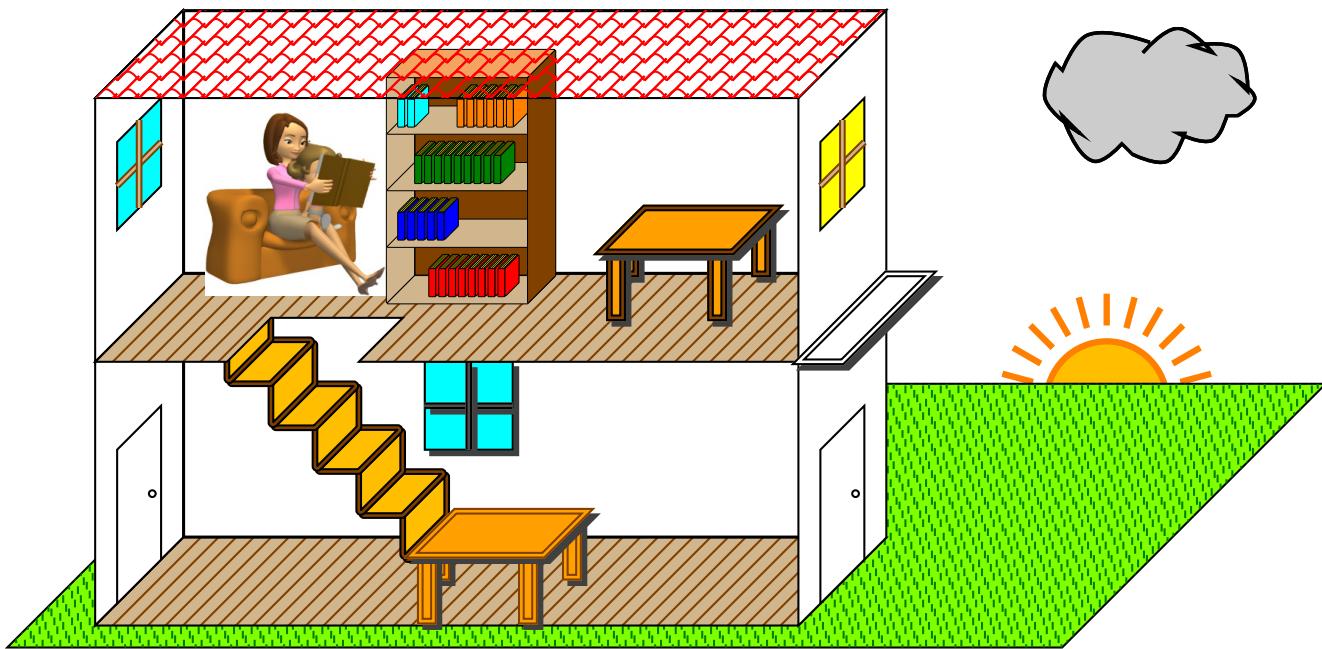




13.



14.



15.

APPENDIX B

LANGUAGE

Following is a fairly complete list of the phones (syllable sounds) of Mandarin Chinese.¹ The columns “1, 2, 3, 4, n” represent first tone, second tone, third tone, forth tone, and neutral, respectively. A check (✓) in a column signifies that a character with the given sound (“phone”) and tone exists in Mandarin Chinese. “IPA-n” represents *International Phoenetic Alphabet narrow transcription*. “IPA-b” represents *International Phoenetic Alphabet broad transcription*. For an audio pronunciation guides of IPA glyphs, see

<http://www.internationalphoneticalphabet.org/ipa-sounds/ipa-chart-with-sounds/>
<http://www.ipachart.com/>

	PinYin	ZhuYin	IPA	1	2	3	4	n		PinYin	ZhuYin	IPA	1	2	3	4	n
1.	a	ㄚ	a	✓		✓	✓		2.	ai	ㄞ	aɪ	✓	✓	✓	✓	
3.	an	ㄢ	aŋ	✓	✓		✓		4.	ang	ㄤ	aŋ	✓	✓		✓	
5.	ao	ㄞ	ao	✓	✓	✓	✓		6.	ba	ㄅㄚ	ba	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
7.	bai	ㄅㄞ	baɪ	✓	✓	✓	✓		8.	ban	ㄅㄢ	ban	✓		✓	✓	
9.	bang	ㄅㄤ	baŋ	✓		✓	✓		10.	bao	ㄅㄞ	baʊ	✓	✓	✓	✓	
11.	bei	ㄅㄟ	be	✓		✓	✓		12.	ben	ㄅㄣ	bən	✓		✓	✓	
13.	beng	ㄅㄥ	bɛŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		14.	bi	ㄅㄧ	bi	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
15.	bian	ㄅㄧㄢ	biɛn	✓		✓	✓		16.	biao	ㄅㄧㄞ	biao	✓		✓		
17.	bie	ㄅㄧㄝ	biɛ	✓	✓	✓	✓		18.	bin	ㄅㄧㄣ	bin	✓		✓		
19.	bing	ㄅㄧㄥ	biŋ	✓		✓	✓		20.	bo	ㄅㄛ	bo	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
21.	bu	ㄅㄨ	bu		✓	✓			22.	ca	ㄅㄚ	tsa	✓				
23.	cai	ㄅㄞ	tsai	✓	✓	✓	✓		24.	can	ㄅㄢ	tsan	✓	✓	✓	✓	
25.	cang	ㄅㄤ	tsaŋ	✓	✓				26.	cao	ㄅㄞ	tsao	✓	✓	✓		
27.	ce	ㄅㄜ	tsɛ			✓			28.	cen	ㄅㄣ	tsən	✓		✓		
29.	ceng	ㄅㄥ	tsɛŋ		✓				30.	cha	ㄅㄚ	tsa	✓	✓	✓	✓	
31.	chai	ㄅㄞ	tsai	✓	✓				32.	chan	ㄅㄢ	tsan	✓	✓	✓	✓	
33.	chang	ㄅㄤ	tsaŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		34.	chao	ㄅㄞ	tsao	✓	✓	✓	✓	
35.	che	ㄅㄜ	tsɛ	✓		✓	✓		36.	chen	ㄅㄣ	tsən	✓	✓			
37.	cheng	ㄅㄥ	tsɛŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		38.	chi	ㄅ	tsɪ	✓	✓	✓	✓	
39.	chong	ㄅㄤㄥ	tsuŋ	✓	✓	✓	✓		40.	chou	ㄅㄡ	tsou	✓	✓	✓	✓	
41.	chu	ㄅㄨ	tsu	✓	✓	✓	✓		42.	chua	ㄅㄨㄚ	tsua				✓	

¹ 葉德明 (2000): *Far East Pinyin Chinese-English Dictionary*: 遠東拼音漢英辭典
 Shibles (1994): *Sino-Platonic Papers*

43.	chuai	ㄔㄨㄞ	tsuai	✓ ✓	44.	chuan	ㄔㄨㄢ	tsuan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
45.	chuang	ㄔㄨㄤ	tsuanj	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	46.	chui	ㄔㄨㄟ	tsui	✓ ✓
47.	chun	ㄔㄨㄣ	tsun	✓ ✓ ✓	48.	choo	ㄔㄨㄛ	tsuo	✓ ✓
49.	ci	ㄔ	ts	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	50.	cong	ㄔㄨㄥ	tsuŋ	✓ ✓
51.	cou	ㄔㄡ	tso	✓	52.	cu	ㄔㄨ	tsu	✓ ✓ ✓
53.	cuan	ㄔㄨㄢ	tsuan	✓	54.	cui	ㄔㄨㄟ	tsue	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
55.	cun	ㄔㄨㄣ	tsun	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	56.	cuo	ㄔㄨㄛ	tsuo	✓ ✓
57.	da	ㄉㄚ	da	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	58.	dai	ㄉㄞ	dai	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
59.	dan	ㄉㄢ	dan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	60.	dang	ㄉㄤ	daŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
61.	dao	ㄉㄜ	dao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	62.	de	ㄉㄜ	de	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
63.	dei	ㄉㄞ	de	✓	64.	deng	ㄉㄥ	dʌŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
65.	di	ㄉㄧ	di	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	66.	dian	ㄉㄧㄢ	diɛn	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
67.	diao	ㄉㄧㄠ	diao	✓ ✓ ✓	68.	die	ㄉㄧㄝ	diɛ	✓ ✓
69.	ding	ㄉㄧㄥ	dinj	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	70.	diu	ㄉㄧㄡ	diu	✓ ✓
71.	dong	ㄉㄨㄥ	dunj	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	72.	dou	ㄉㄡ	do	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
73.	du	ㄉㄨ	du	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	74.	duan	ㄉㄨㄢ	duan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
75.	dui	ㄉㄨㄞ	due	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	76.	dun	ㄉㄨㄣ	dun	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
77.	duo	ㄉㄨㄛ	duo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	78.	e	ㄜ	ə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
79.	en	ㄣ	ən	✓	80.	er	ㄦ	ə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
81.	fa	ㄈㄚ	fa	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	82.	fan	ㄈㄢ	fan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
83.	fang	ㄈㄤ	faŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	84.	fei	ㄈㄟ	fe	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
85.	fen	ㄈㄣ	fən	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	86.	feng	ㄈㄥ	fuŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
87.	fo	ㄊㄜ	fɔ	✓	88.	fou	ㄊㄡ	fou	✓ ✓
89.	fu	ㄊㄨ	fu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	90.	ga	ㄍㄚ	ga	✓ ✓
91.	gai	ㄍㄞ	gai	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	92.	gan	ㄍㄢ	gan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
93.	gang	ㄍㄤ	gaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	94.	gao	ㄍㄠ	gao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
95.	ge	ㄍㄜ	gə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	96.	gei	ㄍㄟ	ge	✓ ✓
97.	gen	ㄍㄣ	gən	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	98.	geng	ㄍㄥ	gʌŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
99.	gong	ㄍㄤㄥ	guŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	100.	gou	ㄍㄡ	gou	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
101.	gu	ㄍㄨ	gu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	102.	gua	ㄍㄨㄚ	gua	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
103.	guai	ㄍㄨㄞ	guai	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	104.	guan	ㄍㄨㄢ	guan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
105.	guang	ㄍㄨㄤ	guanŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	106.	gui	ㄍㄨㄟ	gue	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
107.	gun	ㄍㄨㄣ	gun	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	108.	guo	ㄍㄨㄛ	guo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
109.	ha	ㄏㄚ	xa	✓ ✓ ✓	110.	hai	ㄏㄞ	xai	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
111.	han	ㄏㄢ	xan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	112.	hang	ㄏㄤ	xəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓
113.	hao	ㄏㄠ	xao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	114.	he	ㄏㄜ	xa	✓ ✓ ✓
115.	hei	ㄏㄞ	xe	✓	116.	hen	ㄏㄣ	xən	✓ ✓ ✓
117.	heng	ㄏㄥ	xʌŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	118.	hong	ㄏㄤㄥ	xuŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
119.	hou	ㄏㄡ	xo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	120.	hu	ㄏㄨ	xu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
121.	hua	ㄏㄨㄚ	xua	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	122.	huai	ㄏㄨㄞ	xuai	✓ ✓ ✓
123.	huan	ㄏㄨㄢ	xuan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	124.	huang	ㄏㄨㄤ	xuaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
125.	hui	ㄏㄨㄟ	xue	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	126.	hun	ㄏㄨㄣ	xun	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
127.	huo	ㄏㄨㄛ	xuɔ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	128.	ji	ㄐㄧ	dʒi	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
129.	jia	ㄐㄧㄚ	dʒia	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	130.	jian	ㄐㄧㄢ	dʒien n	✓ ✓ ✓
131.	jiang	ㄐㄧㄤ	dʒianŋ n	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	132.	jiao	ㄐㄧㄜ	dʒiao o	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
133.	jie	ㄐㄧㄝ	dʒie	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	134.	jin	ㄐㄧㄣ	dʒin	✓ ✓ ✓
135.	jing	ㄐㄧㄥ	dʒiŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	136.	jiong	ㄐㄧㄥ	dʒiuŋ n	✓
137.	jiu	ㄐㄧㄡ	dʒiu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	138.	ju	ㄐㄩ	dʒy	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
139.	juan	ㄐㄧㄢ	dʒyan n	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	140.	jue	ㄐㄩㄝ	dʒyε	✓ ✓ ✓
141.	jun	ㄐㄧㄩ	dʒyn	✓ ✓ ✓	142.	ka	ㄎㄚ	ka	✓ ✓ ✓
143.	kai	ㄎㄞ	kai	✓ ✓ ✓	144.	kan	ㄎㄢ	kan	✓ ✓ ✓

145.	kang	ㄎㄤ	kaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	146.	kao	ㄎㄠ	kao	✓ ✓
147.	ke	ㄎㄬ	kə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	148.	ken	ㄎㄣ	kən	✓ ✓
149.	keng	ㄎㄥ	kəŋ	✓ ✓	150.	kong	ㄎㄨㄥ	kəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓
151.	kou	ㄎㄡ	ko	✓ ✓	152.	ku	ㄎㄨ	ku	✓ ✓ ✓
153.	kua	ㄎㄨㄚ	kua	✓ ✓ ✓	154.	kuai	ㄎㄨㄞ	kuaɪ	✓
155.	kuan	ㄎㄨㄢ	kuan	✓ ✓	156.	kuang	ㄎㄨㄤ	kuaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓
157.	kui	ㄎㄨㄟ	kue	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	158.	kun	ㄎㄨㄣ	kun	✓ ✓ ✓
159.	kuo	ㄎㄨㄛ	kuo	✓ ✓	160.	la	ㄌㄚ	la	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
161.	lai	ㄌㄞ	lai	✓ ✓	162.	lan	ㄌㄢ	lan	✓ ✓ ✓
163.	lang	ㄌㄤ	laŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	164.	lao	ㄌㄠ	lao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
165.	le	ㄌㄜ	lə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	166.	lei	ㄌㄞ	le	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
167.	leng	ㄌㄥ	ləŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	168.	li	ㄌㄧ	li	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
169.	lia	ㄌㄧㄚ	lia	✓	170.	lian	ㄌㄧㄢ	liən	✓ ✓ ✓
171.	liang	ㄌㄧㄤ	liəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	172.	liaο	ㄌㄧㄠ	liaο	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
173.	lie	ㄌㄧㄝ	liε	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	174.	lin	ㄌㄧㄣ	lɪn	✓ ✓ ✓
175.	ling	ㄌㄧㄥ	lɪŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	176.	liu	ㄌㄧㄡ	liu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
177.	long	ㄌㄧㄥ	luŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	178.	lou	ㄌㄡ	lo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
179.	lu	ㄌㄨ	lu	✓ ✓ ✓	180.	lü	ㄌㄩ	ly	✓ ✓ ✓
181.	lüe	ㄌㄩㄝ	lyε	✓	182.	luan	ㄌㄨㄢ	luan	✓ ✓ ✓
183.	lun	ㄌㄨㄣ	lun	✓ ✓ ✓	184.	luo	ㄌㄨㄛ	luo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
185.	ma	ㄇㄚ	ma	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	186.	mai	ㄇㄞ	mai	✓ ✓ ✓
187.	man	ㄇㄞ	man	✓ ✓ ✓	188.	mang	ㄇㄤ	mang	✓ ✓
189.	mao	ㄇㄞ	mao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	190.	me	ㄇㄜ	mə	✓
191.	mei	ㄇㄟ	me	✓ ✓ ✓	192.	men	ㄇㄣ	men	✓ ✓ ✓
193.	meng	ㄇㄥ	məŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	194.	mi	ㄇㄧ	mi	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
195.	mian	ㄇㄧㄢ	mien	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	196.	miao	ㄇㄧㄼ	miao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
197.	mie	ㄇㄧㄝ	miε	✓ ✓	198.	min	ㄇㄧㄣ	min	✓ ✓
199.	ming	ㄇㄧㄥ	miŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	200.	miu	ㄇㄧㄡ	miu	✓ ✓ ✓
201.	mo	ㄇㄛ	mo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	202.	mou	ㄇㄡ	mou	✓ ✓ ✓
203.	mu	ㄇㄨ	mu	✓ ✓ ✓	204.	na	ㄋㄚ	na	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
205.	nai	ㄋㄞ	nai	✓ ✓ ✓	206.	nan	ㄋㄢ	nan	✓ ✓ ✓
207.	nang	ㄋㄤ	naŋ	✓ ✓	208.	nao	ㄋㄾ	nao	✓ ✓ ✓
209.	ne	ㄋㄜ	nə	✓ ✓ ✓	210.	nei	ㄋㄟ	ne	✓ ✓ ✓
211.	nen	ㄋㄣ	nən	✓ ✓	212.	neng	ㄋㄥ	nəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓
213.	ni	ㄋㄧ	ni	✓ ✓ ✓	214.	nian	ㄋㄧㄢ	nien	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
215.	niang	ㄋㄧㄤ	niaŋ	✓ ✓	216.	niao	ㄋㄧㄼ	niao	✓ ✓ ✓
217.	nie	ㄋㄧㄝ	niε	✓ ✓	218.	nin	ㄋㄧㄣ	nin	✓ ✓ ✓
219.	ning	ㄋㄧㄥ	niŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	220.	niu	ㄋㄧㄡ	niu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
221.	nong	ㄋㄧㄥ	nŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	222.	nou	ㄋㄡ	nou	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
223.	nu	ㄋㄨ	nu	✓ ✓ ✓	224.	nü	ㄋㄩ	ny	✓ ✓
225.	nuan	ㄋㄨㄢ	nuan	✓	226.	nüe	ㄋㄩㄝ	nyε	✓
227.	nuo	ㄋㄨㄛ	nəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	228.	o	ㄛ	ɔ	✓ ✓
229.	ou	ㄡ	o	✓ ✓ ✓	230.	pa	ㄭㄚ	pa	✓ ✓ ✓
231.	pai	ㄭㄞ	pai	✓ ✓ ✓	232.	pan	ㄭㄢ	pan	✓ ✓ ✓
233.	pang	ㄭㄤ	pəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	234.	pao	ㄭㄿ	pao	✓ ✓ ✓
235.	pei	ㄭㄟ	pe	✓ ✓ ✓	236.	pen	ㄭㄣ	pən	✓ ✓
237.	peng	ㄭㄥ	pəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	238.	pi	ㄭㄧ	pi	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
239.	pian	ㄭㄧㄢ	pien	✓ ✓ ✓	240.	piao	ㄭㄧㄼ	piao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
241.	pin	ㄭㄧㄣ	pin	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	242.	ping	ㄭㄧㄥ	piŋ	✓ ✓
243.	po	ㄭㄜ	pə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	244.	pou	ㄭㄡ	po	✓ ✓
245.	pu	ㄭㄨ	pu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	246.	qi	ㄑㄧ	tʃi	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓

247.	qia	ㄑㄧㄚ	ʈʃia	✓✓✓✓✓	248.	qian	ㄑㄧㄢ	ʈʃien	✓✓✓✓✓
249.	qiang	ㄑㄧㄤ	ʈʃiaŋ	✓✓✓✓✓	250.	qiao	ㄑㄧㄠ	ʈʃiao	✓✓✓✓✓
251.	qie	ㄑㄧㄝ	ʈʃie	✓✓✓✓✓	252.	qin	ㄑㄧㄣ	ʈʃin	✓✓✓✓✓
253.	qing	ㄑㄧㄥ	ʈʃiŋ	✓✓✓✓✓	254.	qiong	ㄑㄧㄙㄶ	ʈʃiŋŋ	✓✓
255.	qiu	ㄑㄧㄡ	ʈʃiɔ	✓✓✓✓	256.	qü	ㄑㄧㄸ	ʈʃy	✓✓✓✓✓
257.	quan	ㄑㄩㄢ	ʈʃyan	✓✓✓✓✓	258.	que	ㄑㄩㄝ	ʈʃyɛ	✓✓✓✓✓
259.	qun	ㄑㄩㄣ	ʈʃyn	✓	260.	ran	ㄖㄢ	ռան	✓✓✓
261.	rang	ㄖㄤ	ռար	✓✓✓✓✓	262.	rao	ㄖㄢㄠ	ռօր	✓✓✓✓✓
263.	re	ㄖㄜ	ռէ	✓✓✓	264.	ren	ㄖㄢ	ռէր	✓✓✓✓✓
265.	reng	ㄖㄤ	ռւր	✓✓	266.	ri	ㄖ	ռ	✓✓✓
267.	rong	ㄖㄤㄥ	ռւր	✓✓	268.	rou	ㄖㄩ	ռվր	✓✓✓✓✓
269.	ru	ㄖㄨ	ռւ	✓✓✓✓	270.	ruan	ㄖㄩㄢ	ռւնտ	✓✓
271.	rui	ㄖㄨㄟ	ռւր	✓✓✓	272.	run	ㄖㄩㄣ	ռւր	✓✓✓
273.	ruo	ㄖㄨㄛ	ռւր	✓	274.	sa	ㄕㄚ	սա	✓✓✓✓✓
275.	sai	ㄕㄞ	ais	✓✓✓	276.	san	ㄕㄢ	սան	✓✓✓✓✓
277.	sang	ㄕㄤ	asŋ	✓✓✓✓	278.	sao	ㄕㄢㄠ	սաօ	✓✓✓✓✓
279.	se	ㄕㄜ	as	✓	280.	sen	ㄕㄢ	սեն	✓
281.	seng	ㄕㄥ	asŋŋ	✓	282.	sha	ㄕㄚ	սա	✓✓✓✓✓✓
283.	shai	ㄕㄞ	asai	✓✓✓✓	284.	shan	ㄕㄢ	սան	✓✓✓✓✓
285.	shang	ㄕㄤ	asŋŋŋ	✓✓✓✓	286.	shao	ㄕㄢㄠ	սաօ	✓✓✓✓✓✓
287.	she	ㄕㄜ	as	✓✓✓✓✓	288.	shei	ㄕㄞ	սե	✓✓✓
289.	shen	ㄕㄣ	asən	✓✓✓✓✓	290.	sheng	ㄕㄥ	սվոյ	✓✓✓✓✓✓
291.	shi	ㄕ	as	✓✓✓✓✓✓✓	292.	shou	ㄕㄡ	սօս	✓✓✓✓✓✓✓
293.	shu	ㄕㄨ	as	✓✓✓✓✓✓	294.	shua	ㄕㄨㄚ	սաս	✓✓✓✓✓✓
295.	shuai	ㄕㄨㄞ	asuaŋ	✓✓✓✓✓	296.	shuan	ㄕㄨㄢ	սան	✓✓✓✓✓
297.	shuang	ㄕㄨㄤ	asuaŋŋ	✓✓✓	298.	shui	ㄕㄨㄞ	սաս	✓✓✓✓✓✓
299.	shun	ㄕㄨㄣ	asun	✓✓✓✓	300.	shuo	ㄕㄨㄛ	սօս	✓✓✓✓✓
301.	si	ㄕ	as	✓✓✓✓✓	302.	song	ㄕㄨㄥ	սոս	✓✓✓✓✓✓
303.	sou	ㄕㄡ	so	✓✓✓✓✓	304.	su	ㄕㄨ	սս	✓✓✓✓✓
305.	suan	ㄕㄨㄢ	suan	✓✓✓✓	306.	sui	ㄕㄨㄞ	սան	✓✓✓✓✓✓
307.	sun	ㄕㄨㄣ	sun	✓✓✓✓✓	308.	suo	ㄕㄨㄛ	սսոս	✓✓✓✓✓
309.	ta	ㄊㄚ	ta	✓✓✓✓✓	310.	tai	ㄊㄞ	тай	✓✓✓✓✓
311.	tan	ㄊㄢ	tan	✓✓✓✓✓✓	312.	tang	ㄊㄢㄉ	تاڭ	✓✓✓✓✓✓
313.	tao	ㄊㄠ	tao	✓✓✓✓✓✓	314.	te	ㄊㄜ	تە	✓✓✓✓✓
315.	teng	ㄊㄥ	taŋ	✓	316.	ti	ㄊㄧ	تى	✓✓✓✓✓✓
317.	tian	ㄊㄧㄢ	tien	✓✓✓✓	318.	tiao	ㄊㄧㄼ	تىاۋو	✓✓✓✓✓✓
319.	tie	ㄊㄧㄝ	tie	✓✓✓	320.	ting	ㄊㄧㄥ	تىڭ	✓✓✓✓✓✓
321.	tong	ㄊㄨㄥ	tuŋ	✓✓✓✓✓✓	322.	tou	ㄊㄡ	تۇ	✓✓✓✓✓
323.	tu	ㄊㄨ	tu	✓✓✓✓✓✓	324.	tuan	ㄊㄨㄢ	تۇان	✓✓✓✓✓
325.	tui	ㄊㄨㄞ	tueŋ	✓✓✓✓✓✓	326.	tun	ㄊㄨㄣ	تۇن	✓✓✓✓✓✓
327.	tuo	ㄊㄨㄛ	tuo	✓✓✓✓✓✓	328.	wa	ㄨㄚ	ۋا	✓✓✓✓✓✓✓
329.	wai	ㄨㄞ	waɪ	✓✓✓	330.	wan	ㄨㄢ	ۋان	✓✓✓✓✓✓
331.	wang	ㄨㄤ	waŋ	✓✓✓✓✓✓	332.	wei	ㄨㄞ	ۋې	✓✓✓✓✓✓
333.	wen	ㄨㄣ	wən	✓✓✓✓✓✓	334.	weng	ㄨㄥ	ۋەن	✓✓✓✓✓✓
335.	wo	ㄨㄛ	wo	✓✓✓✓✓✓	336.	wu	ㄨ	ۋۇ	✓✓✓✓✓✓
337.	xi	ㄒㄧ	ei	✓✓✓✓✓✓	338.	xia	ㄒㄧㄚ	ئىا	✓✓✓✓✓
339.	xian	ㄒㄧㄢ	eien	✓✓✓✓✓✓	340.	xiang	ㄒㄧㄤ	ئىان	✓✓✓✓✓✓
341.	xiao	ㄒㄧㄢ	eiaŋ	✓✓✓✓✓✓	342.	xie	ㄒㄧㄝ	ئىە	✓✓✓✓✓✓
343.	xin	ㄒㄧㄣ	ein	✓✓✓✓✓	344.	xing	ㄒㄧㄥ	ئىېن	✓✓✓✓✓✓
345.	xiong	ㄒㄧㄥ	eioŋŋŋ	✓✓✓	346.	xiu	ㄒㄧㄡ	ئىو	✓✓✓✓✓✓
347.	xu	ㄒㄩ	ey	✓✓✓✓✓✓	348.	xuan	ㄒㄩㄢ	ئۇان	✓✓✓✓✓✓

349.	xue	ㄒㄩㄝ	ɛyε	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	350.	xun	ㄒㄩㄣ	ɛyn	✓ ✓ ✓
351.	ya	ㄧㄚ	ja	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	352.	yai	ㄧㄞ	jai	✓ ✓
353.	yan	ㄧㄢ	jɛn	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	354.	yang	ㄧㄤ	jaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
355.	yao	ㄧㄠ	jao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	356.	ye	ㄧㄝ	je	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
357.	yi	ㄧ	ji	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	358.	yin	ㄧㄣ	jin	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
359.	ying	ㄧㄥ	jiŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	360.	yong	ㄩㄥ	jɔŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
361.	you	ㄧㄡ	ju	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	362.	yu	ㄩ	jy	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
363.	yuan	ㄩㄢ	jyan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	364.	yue	ㄩㄝ	jyε	✓ ✓
365.	yun	ㄩㄣ	jyn	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	366.	za	ㄗㄚ	dza	✓
367.	zai	ㄗㄞ	dzai	✓ ✓ ✓	368.	zan	ㄗㄢ	dzan	✓ ✓ ✓
369.	zang	ㄗㄤ	dzanŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	370.	zao	ㄗㄤ	dzaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
371.	ze	ㄗㄜ	dzə	✓ ✓ ✓	372.	zei	ㄗㄟ	dze	✓
373.	zen	ㄗㄣ	dzən	✓ ✓	374.	zeng	ㄗㄥ	dzəŋ	✓ ✓
375.	zha	ㄓㄚ	za	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	376.	zhai	ㄓㄞ	zai	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
377.	zhan	ㄓㄢ	zan	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	378.	zhang	ㄓㄤ	zaŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
379.	zhao	ㄓㄤ	zao	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	380.	zhe	ㄓㄜ	zə	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
381.	zhen	ㄓㄣ	zən	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	382.	zheng	ㄓㄥ	zəŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
383.	zhi	ㄓ	ʐ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	384.	zhong	ㄓㄨㄥ	zŋ	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
385.	zhou	ㄓㄡ	ʐou	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓	386.	zhu	ㄓㄨ	zŋu	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
387.	zhua	ㄓㄨㄚ	ʐua	✓ ✓	388.	zhuai	ㄓㄨㄞ	zŋuai	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓
389.	zhuan	ㄓㄨㄢ	ʐuan	✓ ✓ ✓	390.	zhuang	ㄓㄨㄤ	zŋuaŋ	✓ ✓
391.	zhui	ㄓㄨㄟ	ʐui	✓ ✓	392.	zhun	ㄓㄨㄣ	zŋun	✓ ✓
393.	zhuo	ㄓㄨㄛ	ʐuo	✓ ✓	394.	zi	ㄗ	dzw	✓ ✓ ✓
395.	zong	ㄗㄨㄥ	dzŋ	✓ ✓ ✓	396.	zou	ㄗㄡ	dzo	✓ ✓ ✓
397.	zu	ㄗㄨ	dzu	✓ ✓ ✓	398.	zuan	ㄗㄨㄢ	dzueŋ	✓ ✓ ✓
399.	zui	ㄗㄨㄟ	dzui	✓ ✓ ✓	400.	zun	ㄗㄨㄣ	dzŋun	✓
401.	zuo	ㄗㄨㄛ	dzŋo	✓ ✓ ✓ ✓					

APPENDIX C

FONT INFORMATION

C.1 Typesetting engine

This text was typeset using \LaTeX , which is part of the \TeX family of typesetting engines, which is arguably the greatest development since the Gutenberg Press. Graphics were rendered using the `pstricks` and related packages, and \TeX graphics support.

```
1 \usepackage{etex}
2 \usepackage{xifthen}
3 \usepackage{calc}
4 \usepackage{array}
5 \usepackage{longtable}
6 \usepackage{xcolor}
7 \usepackage{graphicx}
8 \usepackage{fancyhdr}
9 \usepackage[Glenn]{fncychap}
10 \usepackage{url}
11 \usepackage{index}
12 \usepackage{fancybox}
13 \usepackage[multiple]{footmisc}
14 \usepackage{fancyvrb}
15 \usepackage{nextpage}
16 \usepackage{multicol}
17 \usepackage{colortbl}
18 %\usepackage{xetex-pstricks}
19 \usepackage{pst-node}
20 \usepackage[tiling]{pst-fill}
21 \usepackage{pst-plot}
22 \usepackage{multido}
23 \usepackage{nccrules}
24 \usepackage{pstricks}
25 \usepackage{pstricks-add}
26 \usepackage{pst-grad}
27 \usepackage{geometry}
28 \usepackage{hyperref}
29 \usepackage{prettyref}
30 \usepackage{listings}
```

% deal with counter problem
% if then else support, includes \cnttest
% calculation
% new tabular and array support, \newcolumntype
% tabular with page breaks
% color support
%
% headers
% fancy chapter headings: Sonny, Lenny, Glenn, Conny, Rejne, Bjarne
% url support: \url{} \path{}
% multiple index support
% shadow, oval, and double boxes
% footnote support
% fancy verbatim --- supports verbatim in footnotes plus more
% \cleartooddpage, \cleartoevenpage
% multiple column support
% color in tables
% pstricks help for XeLaTeX and XeTeX
% psmatrix
% pst fill package
% ps plots
% loop support for ps diagrams
% dashed patterns
% graphics support
% fixe and addons for pstricks
% gradients
%
% hyperlinks in text
% references with prefixes
% source code listing support

C.2 Latin fonts

The main font for this document is *Heros*—a *sans-serif* font similar to Helvetica. *Heros* is from the *TeX-Gyre Project* and included in the *TeXLive* distribution.

```

1 \setmainfont[
2   Extension      = { .otf },
3   UprightFont    = { *-regular },
4   BoldFont       = { *-bold },
5   ItalicFont     = { *-italic },
6   BoldItalicFont = { *-bolditalic },
7   Ligatures      = { NoCommon },
8 ]{texgyreheros} % sans-serif font

```

The font used in quotation boxes on page [v](#) is adapted from *Zapf Chancery Medium Italic*, originally from URW++ Design and Development Incorporated. The font used for the text in the title is Adventor (similar to *Avant-Garde*) from the *TeX-Gyre Project*. The font used for the version identifier in the footer of individual pages is *Liquid Crystal* (*Liquid Crystal*) from *FontLab Studio*.

C.3 IPA typesetting

The IPA information is typeset using the *GnuFree Sans-Serif font family*:

<http://www.gnu.org/s/freefont/>

The glyphs were entered using a *TECkit mapping* in an \LaTeX environment with font feature specification as follows:

```
\newcommand{\fntipa}{\fntFreeSans\addfontfeatures{Mapping=/dan/r/common/TECkit/ascii-uipa}}
```

...where *ascii-uipa* is a *TECkit* mapping compiled from a *TECkit ascii-uipa.map* file which is about 350 lines long and looks in part something like this:

```

1 latin_capital_letter_S    <> latin_small_letter_esh      ; tipa | U+0053 <> U+0283
2 latin_capital_letter_Z    <> latin_small_letter_ezh     ; tipa | U+005A <> U+0292
3 BSL COL latin_small_letter_s <> latin_small_letter_s_with_hook ; tipa | \:s    <> U+0282
4 FSL COL latin_small_letter_s > latin_small_letter_s_with_hook ;      | /:s    <> U+0282

```

As a result, “{\fntipa San}” typesets to “Jan”.

C.4 PinYin typesetting

The PinYin information is typeset using the documents main Latin font (see Section [C.2](#)) but with assistance from a *TECkit mapping* in an \LaTeX environment with font feature specification as follows:

```

1 \defaultfontfeatures{%
2   Ligatures      = {NoCommon}, % e.g. "fi" be represented as a single character?
3   Mapping        = /dan/r/common/TECkit/punctuation,
4   SmallCapsFeatures = {Letters=SmallCaps},
5 }

```



...where punctuation is a TECKit mapping compiled from a TECKit punctuation.map file which is about 230 lines long and contains statements like these:

```

1 FSL grave_accent    latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_grave      ;/\`a <> U+00E0
2 FSL apostrophe      latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_acute       ;/\'a <> U+00E1
3 FSL colon            latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_diaeresis   ;/:a <> U+00E4
4 FSL less_than_sign   latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_circumflex  ;/<a <> U+00E2
5 FSL HYP              latin_small_letter_a <> latin_small_letter_a_with_macron     ;/-a <> U+0101

```

As a result, “sh/-an” typesets to “shān”.

C.5 Traditional Chinese typesetting

Traditional Chinese glyphs appearing in the text are from Google's *Noto Sans CJK* font family: <https://www.google.com/get/noto/help/cjk/>.



The Noto project has both *sans-serif* (illustrated to the left) and *serif* (illustrated to the right) fonts available. The serif font is perhaps closer to the traditional brush stroke (as is the Roman serif fonts closer to what was made by Romans using a chisel to carve letters in stones). But it is likely that most people writing Chinese characters by hand will first pick up a pen, not a brush, when learning to write Chinese. And pen strokes are by nature basically sans-serif.



```

1 \newfontfamily{\fntNotoSansCJK}[
2   ExternalLocation ,
3   Path          = {/xfonts/noto/} ,
4   Extension     = {.otf} ,
5   UprightFont   = {*-Regular} ,
6   BoldFont      = {*-Bold} ,
7   ItalicFont    = {*-DemiLight} ,
8   BoldItalicFont= {*-Black} ,
9   Ligatures     = {NoCommon}, % e.g. "fi" be represented as a single character?
10 ]{NotoSansCJKtc}

```

shū	書	shū	書
書	书	書	书
book	book	book	book

upright	bold	italic	bold italic
---------	------	--------	-------------

C.6 Ruby characters

Ruby characters are Asian characters with pronunciation symbols adjacent to that character. For traditional Chinese characters, the symbols are ZhuYin and are located to the right of the character.

我ㄎㄉ看ㄎㄉ到ㄎㄉ你ㄎㄉ

In this document, the font used to achieve this is

Wáng	Hàn	Zōng	zhōng	Míng	tǐ	zhù	yīn
王	漢	宗	中	明	體	注	音
King	the Han people	ancestor	medium	Míng Dynasty	style	to annotate	sound

Font designer's name?

```

1 %
2 % Chinese typefaces with Zhuyin
3 % http://apt.nc.hcc.edu.tw/pub/FreeSoftware/free_fonts/wangttf/
4 %
5 \newfontfamily{\fntWangClearZY}[%
6   ExternalLocation ,
7   Path          = {/xfonts/zht/},
8   Extension     = {.ttf},
9   UprightFont   = {wp010-05},
10  BoldFont      = {wp010-05},
11  ItalicFont    = {wp010-05},
12  BoldItalicFont= {wp010-05},
13 ]{wp010-05}

```

C.7 Simplified Chinese typesetting

Just as the Traditional Chinese glyphs, Simplified Chinese glyphs are from Google's Noto Sans CJK (both traditional and simplified are in the same OpenType files). But in this document, the simplified characters were not typed in directly, rather traditional characters were typed, and then mapped to simplified characters using a *TECkit mapping* in an \LaTeX environment with font feature specification as follows:

```
\newcommand{\fntzhs}{\fntNotoSansCJK\addfontfeatures{Mapping=../common/TECkit/zht2zhs}}
```

...where zht2zhs is a TECkit mapping compiled from a TECkit zht2zhs.map file which is about 3000 lines long and in part looks something like this:

```

1 =====
2 ; Variants to TECkit mapping file
3 ; Daniel J. Greenhoe
4 =====
5 ...
6 U+346F > U+3454 ; 37
7 U+3473 > U+3447 ; 38
8 U+3493 > U+20242 ; 41
9 U+34E8 > U+523E ; 52
10 U+35F2 > U+20D7E ; 68
11 U+361A > U+360E ; 72
12 U+3704 > U+36AF ; 87
13 U+370F > U+36E3 ; 88
14 ...

```

\LaTeX commands have also been defined such as the following:

```

1 \newcommand{\zhtss}[3]{%
2   \begin{tabular}{t}{@{}c@{}}
3     \color{red}\footnotesize#2\\
4     \color{black}\large{\fntzht #1}\\
5     \color{black}\large{\fntzhs #1}\\
6     \color{blue}\footnotesize#3%
7   \end{tabular}%
8   \index[xchar]{{\fntzht #1}/{\fntzhs #1} (#2) #3}
9   \index[xpinyin]{#2 ({\fntzht #1/\fntzhs #1}) #3}
10  \index[xeng]{#3 {\fntzht #1/\fntzhs #1} (#2)}
11 }

```



In the actual body of the document, the information for a character can be input as follows:

\zhtss{見}{ji}`an}{to see}

which writes index information to three different index files (a character index file, a PinYin index file, and an English word index file) and typesets glyphs as appearing to the right:

jìan 見 见 to see

Note that it is arguably safer to map from traditional to simplified rather than the converse because the traditional to simplified mapping tends to be *many-to-one*. An example is the set of traditional characters {干, 幹, 乾}, which all map to the simplified character 干.¹

U+4E7E gān 乾 干 dry U+5E72	U+5E72 gān 干 干 to offend U+5E72	U+5E79 gàn 幹 干 tree trunk U+5E72
--	--	---

However, this is not always the case.

Sometimes the traditional to simplified mapping is *one-to-many*.²

traditional	simplified	PinYin	meaning	Unicode
徵	← 征	zhēng	to invade	U+5FB5 ← U+5F81
徵	← 徵	zhēng	to summon	U+5FB5 ← U+5FB5

C.8 Generating the zht2zhs TECKit map file

As indicated previously, this document supports both traditional and simplified characters where the simplified is in most all cases mapped, when necessary, from the traditional using the TECKit map “[zht2zhs.map](#)”. A mapping is “necessary” when there is “variation” between the two for a given character.

The traditional-simplified variants are identified in a document from www.unicode.org called “[Unihan_Variants.txt](#)”. Version 10.0.0, for example, of this file can be found in “[Unihan.zip](#)” at <https://www.unicode.org/Public/10.0.0/ucd/>.

For this document, “[zht2zhs.map](#)” was generated from “[Unihan_Variants.txt](#)” using a simple command line utility compiled from the C source file called “[var2map.c](#)” resulting in a program which can be used like this:

`var2map.exe Unihan_Variants_10-0-0.txt zht2zhs_10-0-0.map` To download the C source, go to <https://github.com/dgreenhoe/unihan>.

C.9 Default bullet

The ship appearing throughout this text is loosely based on the *Golden Hind*, a sixteenth century English galleon famous for circumnavigating the globe.³ The ship image as appears in this document was rendered using PStricks packages using code which includes something like that listed below:



¹ %

² % forward and middle mast and sails

³ %

² <http://hanzidb.org/character-list/multiple-simplified-variants>

³  Paine (2000): *Warships of the World to 1900* page 63 (Golden Hind)

```
4 {\psset{fillstyle=gradient}%
5 \multirput(21,31)(38,-6){2}{% forward and middle masts and sails
6 \pscustom[linewidth=2pt,arrows=-]{% upper sail
7 \pscurve(-18,8)(-20,22)(-8,36)%
8 \psline(-8,36)(8,52)%
9 \pscurve(8,52)(9,42)(14,40)%
10 \pscurve(14,40)(2,30)(-18,8)%
11 }%
12 \pscustom[linewidth=2pt,arrows=-]{% lower sail
13 \psline(-16,8)(16,40)%
14 \pscurve(16,40)(12,28)(16,20)%
15 \psline(16,20)(-16,-8)%
16 \pscurve(-16,-8)(-20,2)(-16,8)%
17 }%
18 \psline[linewidth=10pt](-17,28)(8,52)% upper crossbeam
19 \psline[linewidth=10pt](-16,8)(16,40)% lower crossbeam
20 \psline[linewidth=10pt](0,0)(0,50)% vertical mast
21 }%
```

Back Matter (后记)

VOCABULARY BY LESSON WITH PINYIN

1 brain(n) 头脑(tóu nǎo), 3
1 compete(v) 比赛(bǐ sài), 3
1 damage(v) 损坏(sǔn huài), 3
1 duathlon(n) 三项铁人(sān xiàng tiě rén), 3
1 handicapped(adj) 残障的(cán zhàng de), 3
1 Hints(n) 提示(tí shì), 7
1 institution(n) 机构(jī gòu), 3
1 intelligent(adj) 有智能的(yǒu zhì néng de), 3
1 ironman(n) 铁人比赛(tiě rén bì sài), 3
1 kilometer(n) 公里(gōng lǐ), 3
1 lose(v) 败(Shū), 3
1 marathon(n) 马拉松(mǎ lā sōng), 3
1 mile(n) 英里(yīng lǐ), 3
1 race(n/v) 赛跑(sài pǎo), 3
1 ride(v) 骑(qí), 3
1 run(v) 跑(pǎo), 3
1 swim(v) 游泳(yóu yǒng), 3
1 train(v) 训练(xùn liào), 3
1 triathlon(n) 三项运动(sān xiàng yùn dòng), 3
1 ultramarathon(n) 超级马拉松(chāo jí mǎ lā sōng), 3
1 vegetable(n) 植物人(zhí wù rén), 3
1 wheelchair(n) 轮椅(lún yǐ), 3
1 win(v) 赢得(yíng dé), 3
2 admit(v) 承认(chéng rèn), 9
2 arrest(v) 逮捕(dǎi bǔ), 9
2 attorney(n) 律师(lǜ shī), 9
2 blood sample(n) 血液样本(xiě yì yàng běn), 9
2 brave(adj) 勇敢的(yǒng gǎn de), 13
2 calm(adj) 镇静的(zhèn jìng de), 13
2 carefree(adj) 无忧无虑的(wú yōu wú lù de), 13
2 clever(adj) 聪明的(cōng míng de), 13
2 committed(adj) 忠诚的(zhōng chéng de), 9
2 convict(v) 证明有罪(zhèng míng yǒu zuì), 9
2 court(n) 法庭(fǎ tíng), 9
2 curious(adj) 好奇的(hào qí de), 13
2 dedicate(v) 献身(xiān shēn), 9
2 degree(n) 学位(xué wèi), 9
2 dependable(adj) 可靠的(kě kào de), 13
2 desert(v) 遗弃(yí qì), 9
2 diligent(adj) 勤劳的(qín láo de), 13
2 drop out(v) 退学(tuì xué), 9

2 exonerate(v) 使免受指控(shǐ miǎn shòu zhǐ kòng), 9
2 fingerprint(n) 指纹(zhǐ wén), 9
2 forgiving(adj) 宽容的(kūan róng de), 13
2 friendly(adj) 友善的(yǒu shàn de), 13
2 generous(adj) 慷慨的(kāng kǎi de), 13
2 gentle(adj) 温和的(w-en hé de), 13
2 guilty(adj) 有罪的(yǒu zuì de), 9
2 hard-working(adj) 努力工作的(nǔ lì gōng zuò de), 13
2 helpful(adj) 有帮助的(yǒu bāng zhù de), 13
2 Hints(n) 提示(tí shì), 14
2 honest(adj) 诚实的(chéng shí de), 13
2 humorous(adj) 幽默的(yōu mò de), 13
2 innocent(adj) 无罪的(wú zuì de), 9
2 intelligent(adj) 有才智的(yǒu cái zhì de), 13
2 kind(adj) 亲切的(qīn qī de), 13
2 law school(n) 法学院(fǎ xué yuàn), 9
2 lawyer(n) 律师(lǜ shī), 9
2 lie detector test(n) 测谎(cè hǔang), 9
2 life in prison(n) 终身监禁(zhōng shēn jiān jìn), 9
2 loyal(adj) 忠诚的(zhōng chéng de), 13
2 murder(v) 谋杀(mó shā), 9
2 patient(adj) 有耐心的(yǒu nài xīn de), 13
2 polite(adj) 有礼貌的(yǒu lǐ mào de), 13
2 promise(v) 答应(dá yīng), 9
2 quiet(adj) 安静的(ān jìng de), 13
2 sentence(v) 宣判(xūan pàn), 9
2 serious(adj) 严肃的(yán sù de), 13
2 shy(adj) 害羞的(hào xiō de), 13
2 stand by(v) 支持(zhī chí), 9
2 studious(adj) 好学的(hào xué de), 13
2 thoughtful(adj) 体贴的(tǐ tiē de), 13
2 wise(adj) 有智慧的(yǒu zhì huì de), 13
3 avalanche(n) 雪崩(xuě bēng), 15
3 boil(v) 沸腾(fèi téng), 15
3 burn(v) 烧(shāo), 15
3 bury(v) 埋藏(mái cáng), 15
3 charcoal(n) 木炭(mù tàn), 15
3 collapse(v) 倒塌(dǎo tā), 15
3 debris(n) 破瓦残砾(pò wǎ cán lì), 15
3 dust(n) 灰尘(hūi chén), 15

3 earthquake(n) 地震(dì zhèn), 15
 3 erupt(v) 迸出(bèng chū), 15
 3 explode(v) 爆炸(bào zhà), 15
 3 flood(n) 洪水(hóng shuǐ), 15
 3 gas(n) 气(qì), 15
 3 hide(v) 躲藏(dǒu cáng), 15
 3 Hints(n) 提示(tí shì), 19
 3 hurricane(n) 飓风(jù fēng), 15
 3 landslide(n) 山崩(shān bēng), 15
 3 predict(v) 预言(yù yán), 15
 3 pyroclastic surge(n) 火山碎屑潮(huǒ shān suì xiè cháo), 15
 3 shatter(v) 粉碎(fěn suì), 15
 3 spread out(v) 摊开(tān kāi), 15
 3 suffocate(v) 窒息(zhì xī), 15
 3 thunderstorm(n) 大雷雨(dà léi yǔ), 15
 3 tornado(n) 龙捲风(lóng juǎn fēng), 15
 3 tsunami(n) 海啸(hǎi xiào), 15
 3 typhoon(n) 台风(tái fēng), 15
 3 vaporize(v) 蒸发(zhēng fā), 15
 3 volcano(n) 火山(huǒ shān), 15
 3 wild fire(n) 野火(yě huǒ), 15
 4 algebra(n) 代数学(dài shù xué), 28
 4 art(n) 艺术(yì shù), 28
 4 biology(n) 生物学(shēng wù xué), 28
 4 book report(n) 读书报告(dú shū bào gào), 23
 4 check mark(n) 勾(gōu), 23
 4 Chinese(n) 中文(zhōng wén), 28
 4 classmate(n) 同学(tóng xué), 23
 4 computer class(n) 电脑课(diàn nǎo kè), 28
 4 drop out(v) 退学(tuì xué), 23
 4 education(n) 教育(jiào yù), 23
 4 English(n) 英文(yīng wén), 28
 4 formal(adj) 正式的(zhèng shì de), 23
 4 French(n) 法语(fǎ yǔ), 28
 4 geography(n) 地理学(dì lǐ xué), 28
 4 graduate(v) 毕业(bì yè), 23
 4 high school(n) 高级中学(gāo jí gāo xué), 23
 4 highlight(n) 亮点(liàng diǎn), 23
 4 history(n) 历史(lì shǐ), 28
 4 homework(n) 功课(gōng kè), 23
 4 honors(n) 荣誉(róng yù), 23
 4 junior high school(n) 初级中学(chū jí zhōng xué), 23
 4 kindergarten(n) 幼稚园(yòu zhì yuán), 23
 4 knowledge(n) 知识(zhī shí), 23
 4 learn(v) 学习(xué xí), 23
 4 library(n) 图书馆(tú shū guǎn), 23
 4 mark(v) 批改(pī gǎi), 23
 4 math(n) 数学(shù xué), 28
 4 music(n) 音乐(yīn lè), 28
 4 parent(n) 父母(fù mǔ), 23
 4 parenting(n) 父母的养育(fù mǔ de yǎng yù), 23
 4 physical education(n) 体育(tǐ yù), 28
 4 primary school(n) 小学(gúo xiǎo), 23
 4 program(n) 节目(jié mù), 23
 4 recognize(v) 认出(rèn chū), 23
 4 rule(n) 规则(guī zé), 23
 4 school(n) 学校(xué xiào), 23
 4 science(n) 科学(kē xué), 28
 4 study(v) 学习(xué xí), 23

4 teacher(n) 老师(lǎo shī), 23
 4 trigonometry(n) 三角函数(sān jiǎo hán shù), 28
 4 university(n) 大学(dà xué), 23
 4 waste(v) 浪费(làng fèi), 23
 4 wisdom(n) 智慧(zhì huì), 23
 5 afraid(adj) 害怕的(hài pà de), 36
 5 angry(adj) 生气的(shēng qì de), 36
 5 athlete(n) 运动员(yùn dòng yuán), 29
 5 big(adj) 大的(dà de), 36
 5 bored(adj) 无聊(wú liáo), 36
 5 bounce(v) 拍(pāi), 36
 5 brush my teeth(v) 刷牙(shūa yá), 36
 5 catch(v) 接(jiē), 36
 5 Chariots of Fire(n) 火战车(huǒ zhàn chē), 32
 5 cheer(v) 欢呼(huān hū), 29
 5 Christmas(n) 圣诞节(shèng dàn jié), 34, 35
 5 collapse(v) 翻倒(yūn dǎo), 29
 5 cook(v) 烹调(zhǔ fàn), 36
 5 cry(v) 哭(kū), 36
 5 dance(v) 跳舞(tiào wǔ), 36
 5 depressed(adj) 沮丧的(jǔ sàng de), 36
 5 do my homework(v) 写功课(xiě gōng kè), 36
 5 dribble(v) 拍(pāi), 36
 5 drink(v) 喝(hē), 36
 5 drive(v) 开(kāi), 36
 5 Earth Day(n) 世界地球日(shì jiè dì qiú rì), 34
 5 Easter(n) 复活节(fù huó jié), 34
 5 eat(v) 吃(chī), 36
 5 embarrassed(adj) 尴尬的(gān gà de), 36
 5 exhausted(adj) 精疲力竭(jīng pí lì jié), 29
 5 fast(adj) 快的(kuài de), 29
 5 fastest(adj) 最快的(zuì kuài de), 29
 5 fat(adj) 胖的(pàng de), 36
 5 Father's Day(n) 父亲节(fù qīn jié), 34, 35
 5 finish(n) 终点(zhōng diǎn), 29
 5 Friday(n) 星期五(xīng qí wǔ), 33
 5 gold medal(n) 金牌(jīn pái), 29
 5 Halloween(n) 万圣节(wàn shèng jié), 34, 35
 5 happy(adj) 快乐的(kuàilè de), 36
 5 head(v) 用头顶(yòng tóu dǐng), 36
 5 hear(v) 听见(tīng jiàn), 36
 5 heavy(adj) 重的(zhòng de), 36
 5 hero(n) 英雄(yīng xióng), 29
 5 hit(v) 打(dǎ), 36
 5 hold(v) 抱(bào), 36
 5 honor(v) 尊荣(zūn róng), 29
 5 humble(adj) 谦逊的(qiān xù de), 29
 5 Independence Day(n) 美国独立纪念日(měi gúo dù lì jì niàn rì), 34, 35
 5 kick(v) 踢(tǐ), 36
 5 laugh(v) 笑(xiào), 36
 5 light(adj) 轻的(qīng de), 36
 5 long(adj) 长的(cháng de), 36
 5 love(n) 爱情(aì qíng), 34
 5 Mars(n) 火星(huǒ xīng), 34
 5 Mercury(n) 水星(shuǐ xīng), 34
 5 meter(n) 公尺(gōng chǐ), 29
 5 Monday(n) 星期一(xīng qí yī), 33
 5 moon(n) 月亮(yuè liàng), 34
 5 Mother's Day(n) 母亲节(mǔ qīn jié), 34
 5 nervous(adj) 紧张的(jǐn zhāng de), 36

5 New Year's Day(n) 元旦(yúan dàn), 34
 5 Olympics(n) 奥运会(ào yùn huì), 29
 5 paint(v) 绘画(yóu qī), 36
 5 proud(adj) 骄傲的(jiāo ào de), 29
 5 read(v) 读(niàng), 36
 5 record(n) 纪录(jì lù), 29
 5 roll(v) 滚动(gǔn dòng), 36
 5 run(v) 跑(pǎo), 36
 5 sad(adj) 难过的(nán gùo de), 36
 5 Saturday(n) 星期六(xīng qí liù), 33
 5 Saturn(n) 土星(tǔ xīng), 34
 5 see(v) 看见(kàn jiàn), 36
 5 serve(v) 发(fā), 36
 5 short(adj) 短的(duǎn de), 36
 5 short(adj) 矮的(aǐ de), 36
 5 sing(v) 唱歌(chàng gē), 36
 5 sleep(v) 睡觉(shuì zháo), 36
 5 small(adj) 小的(xiǎo de), 36
 5 smell(v) 闻(wèi), 36
 5 spin(v) 旋转(xuán zhuan), 36
 5 sprint(v) 全速疾跑(quán sù jí pǎo), 29
 5 start(n) 起点(qǐ diǎn), 29
 5 starting gun(n) 发令枪(fā lìng qīng), 29
 5 steal(v) 抢(qiāng), 36
 5 sun(n) 太阳(tài yáng), 34
 5 Sunday(n) 星期天(xīng qí tiān), 33
 5 surprised(adj) 惊讶的(jīng yà de), 36
 5 swim(v) 游泳(yóu yǒng), 36
 5 tall(adj) 高的(gāo de), 36
 5 taste(v) 味(wèi), 36
 5 Thanksgiving(n) 感恩节(gǎn èn jié), 34, 35
 5 thin(adj) 瘦的(shòu de), 36
 5 throw(v) 丢(diū), 36
 5 thunder(n) 雷声(léi shēng), 34
 5 Thursday(n) 星期四(xīng qí sì), 33
 5 touch(v) 摸(mō), 36
 5 track(n) 跑道(pǎo dào), 29
 5 traitor(n) 叛国者(pàn guó zhě), 29
 5 Tuesday(n) 星期二(xīng qí èr), 33
 5 Valentine's Day(n) 情人节(qíng rén jié), 34
 5 Wednesday(n) 星期三(xīng qí sān), 33
 5 win(v) 赢得(yíng dé), 29
 5 worried(adj) 担心的(dān xīn de), 36
 5 yard(n) 码(mǎ), 29
 6 alive(adj) 活着(huó zhe de), 37
 6 attack(v) 攻击(gōng jí), 37
 6 camp(v) 露营(lù yíng), 37
 6 campsite(n) 露营地(lù yíng dì), 37
 6 dead(adj) 死的(sǐ de), 37
 6 die(v) 死(sǐ), 37
 6 fire(n) 火(huǒ), 37
 6 forest(n) 森林(sēn lín), 37
 6 freeze to death(v) 冻死(dòng sǐ), 37
 6 freeze(v) 冰冻(bīng dòng), 37
 6 hike(n) 健行(jiàn xíng), 37
 6 hiker(n) 健行者(jiàn xíng zhe), 37
 6 Hints(n) 提示(tí shì), 42
 6 human(n/adj) 人类(rén lèi), 37
 6 hypothermia(n) 低体温症(dī tǐ wēn zhèng), 37
 6 investigate(v) 调查(diào chá), 37
 6 investigator(n) 调查者(diào chá zhe), 37

6 landscape(n) 风景(fēng jǐng), 37
 6 military(n/adj) 军用的(jūn yòng de), 37
 6 pine tree(n) 松树(sōng shù), 37
 6 rescue(n/v) 营救(yíng jiù), 37
 6 search and rescue(n) 搜救(sōu jiù), 37
 6 search(n/v) 搜索(sōu sōu), 37
 6 ski(v) 滑雪(huá xuě), 37
 6 sleeping bag(n) 睡袋(shuì dài), 37
 6 tent(n) 帐篷(zhàng péng), 37
 6 weather service(n) 气象局(qì xiàng jú), 37
 6 weather(n) 天气(tiān qì), 37
 7 beach(n) 海滩(hǎi tān), 43
 7 breathe(v) 呼吸(hū xī), 43
 7 choke(v) 窒息(zhì xī), 43
 7 Coast Guard(n) 海岸警卫队(hǎi àn jǐng wèi dùi), 43
 7 coast(n) 海岸(hǎi àn), 43
 7 current(n) 水流(shuǐ liú), 43
 7 drown(v) 淹死(yān sǐ), 43
 7 facemask(n) 潜水面镜(qián shuǐ miàn jìng), 43
 7 goggles(n) 蛙镜(wā jìng), 43
 7 guard(v) 守卫(jǐng wèi), 43
 7 Hints(n) 提示(tí shì), 46
 7 life(n) 生活(shēng huó), 43
 7 lifeguard(n) 救生员(jiù shēng yuán), 43
 7 protect(v) 保护(bǎo hù), 43
 7 rescue(v) 救(jiù), 43
 7 save(v) 救(jiù), 43
 7 snorkel(n) 浮潜(fú qián), 43
 7 survive(v) 生存(shēng cún), 43
 7 swim(v) 游泳(yóu yǒng), 43
 7 swimmer(n) 游泳着(yóu yǒng zhe), 43
 7 swimsuit(n) 泳衣(yǒng yī), 43
 7 tidal wave(n) 海啸(hǎi xiào), 43
 8 abandon(v) 抛弃(pāo qì), 49
 8 abuse(v) 虐待(nüè dài), 49
 8 class president(n) 班代表(bān dài biǎo), 49
 8 collapse(v) 倒塌(dǎo tā), 49
 8 college(n) 大学(dà xué), 49
 8 convertible(n) 敞篷车(chǎng chéng chē), 49
 8 director(n) 董事(dǒng shì), 49
 8 dirty(adj) 肮脏的(āng zāng de), 49
 8 disease(n) 疾病(jí bìng), 49
 8 hospital(n) 医院(yī yuàn), 49
 8 injured(adj) 受伤的(shòu shàng de), 49
 8 kindergarten(n) 幼稚园(yòu zhì yuán), 49
 8 married(adj) 结婚了(jié hūn le), 49
 8 non-profit organization(n) 非营利性组织(fēi yíng lì xìng zǔ zhī), 49
 8 nurse(n) 护士(hù shì), 49
 8 orphan(n) 孤儿(gū ér), 49
 8 orphanage(n) 孤儿院(gū ér yuàn), 49
 8 plan(n) 计划(jì huà), 49
 8 poor(adj) 贫穷的(pín qióng de), 49
 8 relative(n) 亲戚(qīn qī), 49
 8 rich(adj) 丰富的(fēng fù de), 49
 8 social worker(n) 社工(shè gōng), 49
 8 Tennessee(n) 田纳西州(tián nà xī zhōu), 49
 8 Uganda(n) 乌干达(ū gān dá), 49
 8 volunteer(n) 义工(yì gōng), 49
 9 Africa(n) 非洲(fēi zhōu), 57

9 bush(n) 灌木丛(guàn mù cóng), 57
 9 capture(v) 捕获(bǔ huo), 57
 9 electric fence(n) 电围栏(dièn wéi lán), 57
 9 electric(adj) 电的(dièn de), 57
 9 elephant(n) 大象(dà xiàng), 57
 9 escape(v) 逃走(táo zǒu), 57
 9 fence(n) 篱笆(lí bā), 57
 9 forest(n) 森林(sēn lín), 57
 9 herd(n) 象群(xiàng qún), 57
 9 holding pen(n) 栅栏(lán), 57
 9 hunt(v) 追猎(zhuī liè), 57
 9 hunter(n) 猎人(liè rén), 57
 9 hunting grounds(n) 狩猎场(shòu liè chǎng), 57
 9 jungle(n) 丛林(cóng lín), 57
 9 land(n) 土地(tǔ dì), 57
 9 lodge(n) 旅馆(lǚ guǎn), 57
 9 matriarch(n) 女家长(nǚ jiā cháng), 57
 9 preserve(n) 保护区(bǎo hù qū), 57
 9 ranger(n) 护林员(hù lín yuán), 57
 9 shoot(v) 拍摄(pāi shè), 57
 9 trunk(n) 大象的鼻子(dà xiàng de bí zi), 57
 9 trust(v) 相信(xiāng xìn), 57
 9 volt(adj) 伏特的(fú tè de), 57
 9 wildlife preserve(n) 野生动物保护区(yě shēng dòng wù bǎo hù qū), 57
 9 wildlife(n) 野生生物(yě shēng shēng wù), 57
 10 bank account(n) 银行的帐户(yín xíng de zhàng hù), 65
 10 banknote(n) 钞票(chāo piào), 65
 10 check(n) 支票(zhī piào), 65
 10 con artist(n) 诈骗高手(zhà piàn gāo shǒu), 65
 10 con(n) 欺诈(qī zhà), 65
 10 con(v) 欺诈(qī zhà), 65
 10 conman(n) 骗子(piàn zi), 65
 10 counterfeit(adj) 伪造的(wèi zào de), 65
 10 counterfeit(v) 伪造(wèi zào), 65
 10 counterfeiter(n) 伪造者(wèi zào zhe), 65
 10 credit card(n) 信用卡(xìng yòng kǎ), 65
 10 fake(adj) 假的(jiǎ de), 65
 10 forge(v) 伪造(wèi zào), 65
 10 forgery(n) 伪造物(wèi zào wù), 65
 10 fraud(n) 诈骗罪(zhà piàn zuì), 65
 10 I.D.(n) 身分证(shēn fēn zhèng), 65
 10 identification(n) 身分证(shēn fēn zhèng), 65
 10 license(n) 驾照(jià zhào), 65
 10 pretend(v) 假装(piàn zi), 65
 10 scam(n) 骗局(piàn jú), 65
 10 signature(n) 签名(qiān míng), 65
 10 suspect(v) 怀疑(jià zhào), 65
 10 uniform(n) 制服(zhì fú), 65
 11 airplane(n) 飞机(fēi jī), 71
 11 annoy(v) 惹恼(rě nǎo), 71
 11 Argentina(n) 阿根廷(ā gēn tíng), 72
 11 Bolivia(n) 玻利维亚(bō lì wéi yá), 72
 11 Brazil(n) 巴西(bā xī), 72
 11 Chile(n) 智利(zhì lì), 72
 11 Columbia(n) 哥伦比亚(gē lún běi yá), 72
 11 Ecuador(n) 厄瓜多尔(è gūa dōu ěr), 72
 11 forget(v) 忘记(wàng jì), 71
 11 forgive(v) 原谅(yuán liàng), 71
 11 forgiveness(n) 宽恕(yuán liàng), 71

11 French Guiana(n) 法属圭亚那(fǎ zhǔ guī yā nà), 72
 11 gift(n) 礼品(lǐ pǐn), 71
 11 Guyana(n) 盖亚那(gài yā nà), 72
 11 ignore(v) 不理(bù lǐ), 71
 11 jungle(n) 丛林(cóng lín), 71
 11 kill(v) 杀(shā), 71
 11 machete(n) 开山刀(kāi shān dāo), 71
 11 missionary(n) 传教士(chúan jiào shì), 71
 11 Paraguay(n) 巴拉圭(bā lā guī), 72
 11 pastor(n) 牧师(mù shī), 71
 11 peace(n) 平安(píng ān), 71
 11 Peru(n) 秘鲁(mì lǔ), 72
 11 pilot(n) 飞行员(fēi xíng yúan), 71
 11 retaliate(v) 报仇(bào chóu), 71
 11 retaliation(n) 报复(bào fù), 71
 11 revenge(n) 报仇(bào chóu), 71
 11 spear(n) 矛(māo), 71
 11 Suriname(n) 苏利南(sū lì nán), 72
 11 transgression(n) 犯罪(fàn zuì), 71
 11 Uruguay(n) 乌拉圭(wū lā guī), 72
 11 Venezuela(n) 委内瑞拉(wěi nèi ruì lā), 72
 11 violent(adj) 兇暴的(xiōng bào de), 71
 12 amateur(adj) 业余的(yè yú de), 77
 12 arrest(v) 逮捕(dǎi bù), 77
 12 bird(n) 鸟(niǎo), 83
 12 break into(v) 闯入(chǔang rù), 77
 12 bullet proof(adj) 防弹的(fáng dàn de), 77
 12 cloud(n) 云(yún), 83
 12 combat(n) 战斗(zhàn dòu), 77
 12 cry(v) 哭(kū), 83
 12 defend(v) 捍卫(hàn wèi), 77
 12 fight(v) 打架(dǎ jià), 77
 12 fly(v) 飞(fēi), 83
 12 hero(n) 英雄(yīng xióng), 77
 12 heroine(n) 女英雄(nǚ yīng xióng), 77
 12 home(n) 家(jiā), 83
 12 illegal(adj) 非法的(fēi fǎ de), 77
 12 legal(adj) 合法的(hé fǎ de), 77
 12 martial arts(n) 武术(wǔ shù), 77
 12 metropolitan area(n) 都市区(dū shì qū), 77
 12 mixed martial arts(n) 混合武术(hùn hé wǔ shù), 77
 12 mutual(adj) 相互的(xiāng hù de), 77
 12 plane(n) 飞机(fēi jī), 83
 12 police(n) 警察(jǐng chá), 77
 12 professional(adj) 职业的(zhí yè de), 77
 12 record(n) 记录(jí lù), 77
 12 ride(v) 骑(qí), 83
 12 shot(v) 射击(shè jí), 77
 12 ski mask(n) 滑雪面具(huá xuě miàn jù), 77
 12 skill(n) 技术(jì shù), 77
 12 sleep(v) 睡觉(shuì jiào), 83
 12 stab proof(adj) 防刺的(fáng cì de), 77
 12 stab(v) 刺(cì), 77
 12 suit(n) 制服(zhì fú), 77
 12 superhero(n) 超级英雄(chāo jí yīng xióng), 77
 12 traffic camera(n) 交通摄像头(jīāng tōng shè xiàng tóng), 77
 12 train(n) 火车(huǒ chē), 83
 12 video(n) 影片(yǐng piàn), 77

13 beloved(adj) 心爱的(xīn ài de), 85
 13 blind(adj) 盲目的(máng mù de), 85
 13 boyfriend(n) 男朋友(nán péng yǒu), 85
 13 couple(n) 夫妻(fū qī), 85
 13 date(v/n) 约会(yuē hùi), 85
 13 engaged(adj) 订婚的(dìng hūn de), 85
 13 feel(v) 感觉(gǎn jué), 85
 13 feeling(n) 感觉(gǎn júe), 85
 13 fiance(n) 未婚夫(wèi hūn fū), 85
 13 fiancee(n) 未婚妻(wèi hūn qī), 85
 13 girlfriend(n) 女朋友(nǚ péng yǒu), 85
 13 like(v) 喜欢(xǐ huān), 85
 13 love(n) 爱情(aì qíng), 85
 13 love(v) 爱(aì), 85
 13 lust(n) 性慾(xìng yù), 85
 13 marriage(n) 婚姻(hūn yīn), 85
 13 married(adj) 已婚的(yǐ hūn de), 85
 13 marry(v) 结婚(jié hūn), 85
 13 unrequited(adj) 无报答的(wú bào dá de), 85
 13 wedding(n) 婚礼(hūn lǐ), 85
 14 actor(n) 男演员(nán yǎn yúan), 91
 14 actress(n) 女演员(nǚ yǎn yúan), 91
 14 advertisement(n) 广告(guǎng gào), 91
 14 artist(n) 艺术家(yì shù jiā), 91
 14 artwork(n) 艺术品(yì shù pǐn), 91
 14 business card(n) 名片(míng piàn), 91
 14 demonstrator(n) 示威者(shì wēi zhě), 91
 14 disguise(n) 伪装(wèi zhūang), 91
 14 embassy(n) 大使馆(dà shǐ guǎn), 91
 14 fake(adj) 假的(jiǎ de), 91
 14 Hollywood(n) 好莱坞(hǎo lái wù), 91
 14 makeup artist(n) 化妆师(huà zhūang shī), 91
 14 makeup(n) 化妆(huà zhūang), 91
 14 movie(n) 电影(diàn yǐng), 91
 14 novel(n) 小说(xiǎo shōu), 91
 14 office(n) 办事处(bàn shì chǔ), 91
 14 passport(n) 护照(hù zhào), 91
 14 pretend(v) 假装(jiǎ zhūang), 91
 14 script(n) 剧本(jù běn), 91
 14 series(n) 电视剧(diàn shì jù), 91
 15 abandon(v) 离弃(lí qì), 97
 15 barrel(n) 大桶(dà tǒng), 97
 15 board(v) 上船(shàng chúan), 97
 15 boat(n) 小船(xiǎo chúan), 97
 15 cabin(n) 客舱(kè cāng), 97
 15 captain(n) 船长(chúan zhǎng), 97
 15 class(n) 阶级(jiē jí), 97
 15 collide(v) 碰撞(pèng zhùang), 97
 15 compass(n) 指南针(zhǐ nán zhēn), 97
 15 course(n) 路线(lù xiàn), 97
 15 crew member(n) 船员(chuān yuán), 97
 15 crew(n) 船员们(chuān yuán men), 97
 15 deck(n) 甲板(jiǎ bǎn), 97
 15 destroyer(n) 驱逐舰(qū zhú jiàn), 97
 15 lighthouse(n) 灯塔(dēng tǎ), 97
 15 naval(n) 海军的(hǎi jūn de), 97
 15 navigation(n) 航行(háng xíng), 97
 15 navy(n) 海军(hǎi jūn), 97
 15 operate(v) 操作(cāo zuò), 97
 15 pirate(n) 海盗(hǎi dào), 97
 15 raft(n) 木筏(mù fá), 97

15 riverbank(n) 河岸(hé àn), 97
 15 rowboat(n) 划艇(húa tǐng), 97
 15 sail(n) 帆(fán), 97
 15 sail(v) 驾船(jià chúan), 97
 15 seaman(n) 海员(hǎi yúan), 97
 15 ship(n) 船(chúan), 97
 15 signal(v) 示意(shì yì), 97
 15 sword(n) 剑(jiàn), 97
 15 telescope(n) 望远镜(wàng yuǎn jìng), 97
 16 assist(v) 帮助(bāng zhù), 103
 16 assistance(n) 帮助(bāng zhù), 103
 16 help(v/n) 帮助(bāng zhù), 103
 16 hide(vi) 躲藏(dǒu cáng), 103
 16 hide(vt) 藏起来(cáng qǐ lái), 103
 16 relief(n) 救济物品(jiù jì wú pǐn), 103
 16 relieve(v) 缓和(huǎn hé), 103
 16 serve(v) 服务(fú wù), 103
 16 service(n) 服务(fú wù), 103
 16 sewer(n) 下水道(xià shuǐ dào), 103
 16 support(n/v) 扶养(fú yǎng), 103
 16 support(v) 支撑(zhī chēng), 103
 16 sustain(v) 维持(wéi chí), 103
 16 sustenance(n) 食物(shí wù), 103
 17 camp(n) 营地(yíng dì), 107
 17 clean(adj) 干淨的(gān jìng de), 107
 17 clean(v) 打扫(dǎ sǎo), 107
 17 diarrhea(n) 腹泻(fù xiè), 107
 17 dirty(adj) 肮脏的(zāng de), 107
 17 disease(n) 疾病(jí bìng), 107
 17 dispose of(v) 处理掉(chǔ lǐ diào), 107
 17 hygiene(n) 卫生(wèi shēng), 107
 17 infect(v) 传染(chuán rǎn), 107
 17 lab(n) 实验室(shí yàn shì), 107
 17 mix(v) 混和(hùn hé), 107
 17 organization(n) 组织(zǔ zhī), 107
 17 pathogen(n) 病原体(bìng yuán tǐ), 107
 17 pneumonia(n) 肺炎(fèi yán), 107
 17 recycle(v) 回收(huí shōu), 107
 17 refugee camp(n) 难民营(nán míng yíng), 107
 17 refugee(n) 难民(nán míng), 107
 17 sanitize(v) 消毒(xiāo dù), 107
 17 scrape(v) 刮(gūa), 107
 17 scrub(v) 用力擦洗(yòng lì cā xǐ), 107
 17 shampoo(n) 洗发水(xǐ fà shuǐ), 107
 17 soap(n) 肥皂(féi zào), 107
 17 throw away(v) 丢掉(diū diào), 107
 17 wash(v) 洗(xǐ), 107
 18 affection(n) 感情(gǎn qíng), 111
 18 beggar(n) 乞丐(qǐ gài), 111
 18 class(n) 阶级(jiē jí), 111
 18 dignity(n) 尊严(zūn yán), 111
 18 elderly(adj) 年纪大的(nián jì de rén), 111
 18 elite(adj) 精英的(jīng yīng de), 111
 18 friendless(adj) 没有朋友的(méi yǒu péng yǒu de), 111
 18 helpless(adj) 无助的(wú zhù de), 111
 18 homeless(adj) 无家的(wú jiā de), 111
 18 lower class(adj) 下层阶级的(shàng céng jiē jí de), 111
 18 mental(adj) 精神的(jīng shén de), 111
 18 mentally ill(adj) 精神病的(jīng shén bìng de),

111

- 18 nutrition(n) 营养(yíng yǎng), 111
 18 physical(adj) 身体的(shēn tǐ de), 111
 18 purpose(n) 目的(mù de), 111
 18 reach out(v) 帮助(bāng zhù), 111
 18 save(v) 救(jiù), 111
 18 shocked(adj) 震惊的(zhèn jīng de), 111
 18 sick(adj) 有病的(yǒu bìng de), 111
 18 upper class(adj) 上层阶级的(shàng céng jiē jí de), 111
 19 airforce(n) 空军(kōng jūn), 115
 19 Allies(n) 盟国(méng gúo), 115
 19 armor(n) 盔甲(kūi jiǎ), 115
 19 army(n) 陆军(lù jūn), 115
 19 battle(n) 交战(jiāo zhàn), 115
 19 bullet(n) 子弹(zì dàn), 115
 19 commander(n) 指挥官(zhǐ huī guān), 115
 19 fight(v) 打仗(dǎ zhàng), 115
 19 guerrilla warfare(n) 遊擊战(yóu jí zhàn), 115
 19 gun(n) 枪(qiāng), 115
 19 hide(v) 藏起来(cáng qǐ lái), 115
 19 intelligence(n) 情报(qíng bào), 115
 19 invade(v) 入侵(rù qīn), 115
 19 invasion(n) 入侵(rù qīn), 115
 19 jungle(n) 丛林(cóng lín), 115
 19 kill(v) 杀死(shā sǐ), 115
 19 navy(n) 海军(hǎi jūn), 115
 19 order(n) 命令(mìng lìng), 115
 19 order(v) 指示(zhǐ shì), 115
 19 pardon(v) 原谅(yuán liàng), 115
 19 search party(n) 搜索队(sōu sōu dùi), 115
 19 shoot(v) 射中(shè zhōng), 115
 19 soldier(n) 士兵(shì bīng), 115
 19 surrender(v) 投降(tóu jiàng), 115
 19 survive(v) 活下来(huó xià lái), 115
 19 trick(n) 诡计(guǐ jì), 115
 19 trick(v) 哄骗(hǒng piàn), 115
 19 war(n) 战争(zhàn zhēng), 115
 19 warrior(n) 武士(wǔ shì), 115
 19 World War II(n) 第二次世界大战(dì èr cì shì jiè dà zhàn), 115
 19 wound(v) 伤害(shāng hāi), 115
 20 aircraft(n) 航空器(háng kōng qì), 121
 20 airplane(n) 飞机(fēi jī), 121
 20 astronaut(n) 太空人(tài kōng rén), 121
 20 balloon(n) 气球(qì qiú), 121
 20 copilot(n) 副驾驶员(fù jià shǐ yúan), 121
 20 door(n) 门(mén), 121
 20 feet(n) 英尺(yīng chǐ), 121

- 20 flight attendant(n) 空服员(kōng fú yuán), 121
 20 flight engineer(n) 航空工程师(háng kōng gōng chéng shī), 121
 20 float(v) 浮(fú), 121
 20 fly(v) 飞(fēi), 121
 20 fuel(n) 燃料(rán liào), 121
 20 hang-glider(n) 滑翔翼(huá xiáng yì), 121
 20 helicopter(n) 直升机(zhí shēng jī), 121
 20 jet(n) 喷射机(pēn shè jī), 121
 20 kite(n) 风筝(fēng zhēng), 121
 20 land(v) 降落(jiàng luò), 121
 20 meter(n) 公尺(gōng chǐ), 121
 20 missile(n) 飞弹(fēi dàn), 121
 20 parachute(n) 降落伞(jiàng luò sǎn), 121
 20 passenger(n) 乘客(chéng kè), 121
 20 pilot(n) 飞行员(fēi xíng yúan), 121
 20 rocket(n) 火箭(huǒ jiàn), 121
 20 satellite(n) 人造卫星(rén zào wèi xīng), 121
 20 seat(n) 座位(zuo wèi), 121
 20 spaceship(n) 太空船(tài kōng chuan), 121
 20 stairs(n) 楼梯(lóu tī), 121
 20 stewardess(n) 女服务员(nǚ fú wù yúan), 121
 20 take off(v) 起飞(qǐ fēi), 121
 20 ticket(n) 票(piào), 121
 21 alphabet(n) 字母(zì mǔ), 127
 21 character(n) 字位(zì wèi), 127
 21 consonant(n) 子音(zì yīn), 127
 21 glyph(n) 字形(zì xíng), 127
 21 grapheme(n) 字位(zì wèi), 127
 21 ideograph(n) 形意文字(xíng yì wén zì), 127
 21 language(n) 语言(yǔ yán), 127
 21 nontonal(adj) 无声的(wú whēng de), 127
 21 phone(n) 声音(shēng yīn), 127
 21 phoneme(n) 音位(yīn wèi), 127
 21 phonetics(n) 语音系(yǔ yīn xì), 127
 21 pictograph(n) 象形文字(xiàng xíng wén zì), 127
 21 script(n) 字母(zì mǔ), 127
 21 sound(n) 声音(shēng yīn), 127
 21 syllable(n) 音节(yīn dié), 127
 21 tonal(adj) 有声的(yǒu shēng de), 127
 21 tone(n) 声(shēng), 127
 21 voiced(adj) 浊音的(zhúo yīn de), 127
 21 voiceless(adj) 清音的(qīng yīn de), 127
 21 vowel(n) 母音(mǔ yīn), 127
 22 alligator(n) 鳄鱼(), 135
 22 farmer(n) 农夫(), 135
 22 vet(n) 兽医(), 135
 22 zookeeper(n) 动物园管理员(), 135

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Pompeii Live from the British Museum. 2013 (URL: http://www.britishmuseum.org/whats_on/past_exhibitions/2013/pompeii_and_herculaneum/pompeii_live/eruption_timeline.aspx)
2. **Abagnale, Frank W. and Redding, Stan:** Catch Me If You Can. Grosset & Dunlap, 1980, ISBN 0-7679-0538-5
3. **Adkins, Lesley and Adkins, Roy A.:** Handbook to Life in Ancient Rome. Oxford University Press, 1998, Oxford paperbacks (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0195123328>), 404, ISBN 9780195123326
4. **Aitkenhead, Decca:** Betty Anne Waters: 'We thought Kenny was coming home'. The Guardian, December 11 2010 (URL: <http://www.theguardian.com/film/2010/dec/11/betty-anne-waters-interview>)
5. **Allen, Bonnie:** In Uganda, American Becomes Foster Mom To 13 Girls. NPR, July 09 8:00AM 2011 (URL: <http://www.npr.org/2011/07/09/137348637/>)
6. Animation Factory. Peoria, Illinois, USA, 1996-* (URL: <http://www.animationfactory.com>)
7. **Anthony, Lawrence and Spence, Graham:** The Elephant Whisperer: Learning about Life, Loyalty and Freedom from a Remarkable Herd of Elephants. Sidgwick & Jackson, 2009 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0283070870>), 288, ISBN 978-0-283-07087-7
8. **Arruda, Danny:** Phoenix Rising. Sports Center, 2015 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=L5iKjVZbEUI>)
9. **Association, International Phonetic:** Handbook of the International Phonetic Association : A Guide to the Use of the International Phonetic Alphabet. New York: Cambridge University Press, June 28 1999 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0521637511>), 214, ISBN 0521637511
10. **Atiya, Farid:** Ancient Egypt. American Univ in Cairo Press, 2006 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9771736345>), 296, ISBN 9771736345
11. **Bagg, Julia:** Fired Lifeguard Gets Key to City: Lifeguard honored for helping save drowning man in Hallandale Beach. NBC 6 South Florida, July 9, 7:09 PM EDT 2012 (URL: <http://www.nbciami.com/news/Fired-LifeGuard-Gets-Key-to-City-161803365.html>)
12. **Bearman, Joshuah:** Flight From Iran. Wired Magazine, April 24 2:00am 2007a (URL: http://www.wired.com/magazine/2007/04/feat_cia_sb/), accessed 2013 March 03
13. **Bearman, Joshuah:** How the CIA Used a Fake Sci-Fi Flick to Rescue Americans From Tehran. Wired Magazine, April 24 2:00am 2007b (URL: http://www.wired.com/magazine/2007/04/feat_cia/all/), accessed 2013 March 03
14. **Bekoff, Marc:** Elephants Mourn Loss of "Elephant Whisperer" Lawrence Anthony. Psychology Today, March 07 2012 (URL: <https://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/animal-emotions/201203/elephants-mourn-loss-elephant-whisperer-lawrence-anthony>)
15. **Benge, Geoff and Benge, Janet:** Eric Liddell: Something Greater Than Gold. Y.W.A.M. Publishers, September 1 1998, Christian Heroes: Then & Now (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1576581373>), 203, ISBN 978-1576581377
16. The Bible.
17. **Blackwood, Gary L.:** Enigmatic Events. Marshall Cavendish, 2005 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN076141889X>), 72, ISBN 076141889X

18. **Boster, James S., Yost, James and Peeke, Catherine:** Rage, Revenge, and Religion: Honest Signaling of Aggression and Nonaggression in Waorani Coalitional Violence. *Ethos*, 31 December, Nr. 4, 471–494 (URL: <http://cognition.clas.uconn.edu/~jboster/research/warfare/rrr.pdf>)
19. **Brant, John:** Team Hoyt Starts Again. *Runner's World*, 41 May 2006, Nr. 5 (URL: http://www.runnersworld.com/events/boston06/Mag_hoyt.html), ISSN 0897-1706
20. **Burnett, Erin:** Lifeguard Fired for Saving Swimmer. *Erin Burnett OutFront*, July 5 2012 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=wNiB02NNaFU>)
21. **Burnton:** 50 stunning Olympic moments: No8 Eric Liddell's 400 metres win, 1924. *The Guardian*, Janauary 04 2012a (URL: <http://www.theguardian.com/sport/2012/jan/04/50-stunning-olympic-moments-eric-liddell>)
22. **Burnton, Simon:** From Budd to Bolt: 50 Stunning Sporting Moments. *Guardian Books*, 2012b (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0852654510>), ISBN 9780852654514
23. **Canfor-Dumas, Edward and Nicholson, Peter:** Pompeii: The Last Day. 2003 (URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=sQzDcZE2hoE>)
24. **Carson, Ben:** There Is No Job More Important Than Parenting. *npr.org*, October 10 2005 (URL: <http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=4950531>)
25. **Carson, Ben and Murphey, Cecil B.:** Gifted Hands. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 1990 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0310546508>), ISBN 0310546508
26. **Carson, Ben and Murphey, Cecil B.:** Think big: unleashing your potential for excellence. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, February 17 1992 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0310574102>), 256, ISBN 0310574102
27. **Carson, Ben and Murphey, Cecil B.:** Think Big: Unleashing Your Potential for Excellence. reprint edition. Grand Rapids: Zondervan, 2005 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0310269008>), 266
28. **Chiger, Krystyna and Paisner, Daniel:** The Girl in the Green Sweater: A Life in Holocaust's Shadow. Media Tie-In edition edition. St. Martin's Press, September 30 2008 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B003H4I4S6/>), 288, ISBN 9780312376567
29. **Chiger, Krystyna and Paisner, Daniel:** The Girl in the Green Sweater: A Life in Holocaust's Shadow. Media Tie-In edition edition. St. Martin's Press, April 1 2010 (URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/B003H4I4S6/>), 289, ISBN 0312376561
30. **Cobb, Richard:** A Dialogue With God. Xulon Press, 2002 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1591600030>), 108, ISBN 1591600030
31. **Davis, Katie and Clark, Beth:** Kisses from Katie: A Story of Relentless Love and Redemption. New York: Howard Books, A Division of Simon & Schuster, October 2011 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9781451612097>), ISBN 9781451612066
32. Dr. Eye for Windows 95/98/NT/2000/ME/XP. Inventec Group (URL: <http://www.dreye.com>)
33. **Edwards, Ivana:** From a Polish Sewer, War Memories. *The New York Times*, November 24 1991 (URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/1991/11/24/nyregion/from-a-polish-sewer-war-memories.html>)
34. **Eichar, Donnie:** Dead Mountain: The Untold True Story of the Dyatlov Pass Incident. Chronicle Books, October 22 2013 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1452129568>), 288, ISBN 9781452129563
35. **Elliot, Elisabeth:** Through Gates of Splendor. Living Books, 1981 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1598564692>), 274, ISBN 0842371516
36. **Elliot, Elisabeth:** Through Gates of Splendor: The Event That Shocked the World, Changed a People, and Inspired a Nation. Hendrickson Publishers, 2010, Hendrickson Classic Biographies (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN1598564692>), 277, ISBN 1598564692
37. Eric Liddell—Original Footage of his Gold Medal Winning Race. 1924, video (URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fRdrtp5YAxU>)
38. **Ewen, David:** The Book of Modern Composers. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1950 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=yHw4AAAAIAAJ>), 586
39. **Ewen, David:** The New Book of Modern Composers. 3rd edition. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 1961 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=bZIaAAAAMAAJ>), 491
40. **Ewing, Bill, Gavigan, Bart and Hanon, Jim:** End of the Spear. 2006, film

41. **Fay, Charles Edey:** The Story of the "Mary Celeste". Courier Dover Publications, 1989 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0486257304>), 320, ISBN 0486257304
42. **Fowlkes, Ben:** Real-life crimefighter 'Phoenix Jones' returns to MMA. USA Today, April 8, 6:38pm EDT 2015 (URL: <http://www.usatoday.com/story/sports/mma/2015/04/08/ben-fodor-real-life-crimefighter-phoenix-jones--wsof/25477467/>)
43. UPDATE: Elephants Who Appeared To Mourn Their Human Friend Remain Protected. George Strombouopoulos Tonight, July 25 2012 (URL: <http://www.cbc.ca/strombo/social-issues/saying-goodbye-elephants-hold-apparent-vigil-to-mourn-their-human-friend.html>), retrieved 2012 September 16
44. **Goldstein, Ken:** Unmasked: The Detailed Account of Phoenix Jones. 2011 (URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=60hi2WV2HV4>), copyright Peter Tangen
45. **Gray, Geoffrey:** SKYJACK: The Hunt for D. B. Cooper. 1st edition. New York: Crown Publishing Group, 2011 (URL: <http://books.google.com.tw/books?vid=ISBN0307451313>)
46. **Greenhoe, Daniel J.:**
47. **Greenhoe, Daniel J.:** 2011
48. **Greenhoe, Daniel J.:** 2012
49. **Hanon, Jim:** Beyond the Gates of Splendor. 2004, film
50. **Hardy, Godfrey H.:** A Mathematician's Apology. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1940 (URL: <http://www.math.ualberta.ca/~mss/misc/A%20Mathematician's%20Apology.pdf>)
51. **Harshman, Edward J., MacHale, Des and Sloane, Paul:** Classic Lateral Thinking Puzzles. Main Street; Sterling Publishing Company, 2004, 278, ISBN 9781402710629
52. **Hayes, Liz:** Team Hoyt. Sixty Minutes, May 27 2007 (URL: <http://sixtyminutes.ninemsn.com.au/article.aspx?id=269257>)
53. **Heijenoort, Jean Van:** From Frege to Gödel : A Source Book in Mathematical Logic, 1879-1931. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1967 (URL: <http://www.hup.harvard.edu/catalog/VANFGX.html>)
54. **Held, Tom:** Father, son together for the long run. Milwaukee Journal Sentinel, February 19 2007a (URL: <http://www3.jsonline.com/story/index.aspx?id=567488>), includes audio interview with Dick Hoyt
55. **Held, Tom:** Purity of Purpose. Milwaukee Journal Sentinel, February 20 2007b (URL: <http://dev.www.jsonline.com/blogs/lifestyle/31918154.html>)
56. **Helwani, Ariel:** Episode 273. The MMA Hour, 273 March 16, 5:00pm CUT – 8:30pm CUT 2015 (URL: <https://soundcloud.com/the-mma-hour/the-mma-hour-episode-273>), 1:32:46–1:58:55, phone interview
57. **Housman, Alfred Edward:** More Poems. Alfred A. Knopf, 1936 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=rTMiAAAAMAAJ>), 146
58. **Howell, Arnesa:** Dr. Ben Carson to Receive 91st Springarn Medal. The Crisis, July–August 2006, 54–56 (URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=WEIEAAAABAJ&pg=PA54>)
59. **Howell, James:** Proverbs in English, Italian, French and Spanish. 1659
60. **Hruby, Patrick:** Tony Mendez, clandestine CIA hero of Ben Affleck's 'Argo,' reveals the real story behind film smash. Washington Post, October 10 2012 (URL: <http://www.washingtonpost.com/news/2012/oct/10/hollywood-cant-make-this-up-argo-recounts-the-cia-/>), retrieved 2013 April 14
61. **Jashemski, Wilhelmina Feemster and Meyer, Frederick G., editors:** The Natural History of Pompeii. Cambridge University Press, September 19 2002, 502, ISBN 9780521800549
62. **Jesse Roesler, et.al.:** Give Me Your Hungry. 2013, a film created by Jesse Roesler (director), Bill Kersey (editor), Victor Rukavina, Patrick Meehan, Thomas Schmidt, Jay Rudeen, Allie Young (URL: <http://givemeyourhungry.com/>)
63. **Kayongo, Derreck:** A Passion Driven Life With a Purpose. The Blog, December 04 1:45pm 2012 (URL: http://www.huffingtonpost.com/derreck-kayongo/global-soap-project_b_2238121.html), The Blog: "Featuring fresh takes and real-time analysis from HuffPost's signature lineup of contributors"
64. **Knight-Jadczyk, Laura:** The Secret History of the World and How to Get Out Alive. 3rd edition. Red Pill Press, Ltd, 2005, 782, ISBN 9781897244166

65. **Krishnan, Narayanan:** CNN Top 10 Hero Krishnan's interview in CNN International. 2010a <URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=q0bXqvBIbpc>>
66. **Krishnan, Narayanan:** TEDx MICA - Narayanan Krishnan -The Joy Of Giving. 2010b <URL: www.youtube.com/watch?v=2G5fAN47d0M>
67. **Lewis, M. Paul, editor:** Ethnologue: Languages of the World. 16th edition. Dallas: Intl Academic Bookstore, 2009 <URL: <http://www.ethnologue.com/>>, 1248, ISBN 1556712162
68. **Lewis, Richard:** Man who had been freed after 20 years in prison dies from fall. AP News, September 19 2001 <URL: <http://truthinjustice.org/waters-fall.htm>>
69. The Flying Scotsman takes gold and sets a new record—Eric Liddell—Paris 1924 Olympic Games., video <URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=IYNUxdoIacA>>
70. **Liddell, Maureen:** Our Magic Circle: Reflections of Eric Liddell by His Daughter Maureen. Day of Discovery, August 17 2012 <URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=5inAjERMZOE>>
71. **Long, Melissa:** One man's trash is another's treasure. 11 Alive, December 01 2:36pm 2011 <URL: <http://www.11alive.com/news/article/215271/3/One-mans-trash-is-anothers-treasure>>
72. **Loon, Hendrik Willem Van:** The Story of Mankind. New York: Boni and Liveright, 1921 <URL: <http://archive.org/details/storyofmankind00vanl>>
73. **Manila(AP):** Japanese Hunt War Stragglers. Syracuse Post Standard, October 20 1959 <URL: <http://newspaperarchive.com/us/new-york/syracuse/syracuse-post-standard/1959/10-20/page-8>>
74. **Marshall, Robert:** In the Sewers of Lvov. Bloomsbury Publishing, August 31 2012a <URL: <http://www.amazon.com/gp/product/B0091DC6XQ/>, ISBN 9781448210022
75. **Marshall, Robert:** In the Sewers of Lvov: A Heroic Story of Survival from the Holocaust. Scribner, August 31 2012b <URL: [http://www.amazon.com/dp/0684193205

76. **Marshall, Sir Arthur:** Recollections of Eric Liddell By Sir Arthur Marshall. <URL: <http://www.ericliddell.org/ericliddell/1924-olympics>>

77. **Martin, Douglas:** Lawrence Anthony, Baghdad Zoo Savior, Dies at 61. New York Times, March 11 2012, A19 <URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2012/03/12/world/africa/lawrence-anthony-baghdad-zoo-savior-dies-at-61.html>>, accessed 2012 September 02

78. **Matson, Barbara:** Dick and Rick Hoyt run 32nd and last Marathon. The Boston Globe, April 22 2014 <URL: <https://www.bostonglobe.com/sports/2014/04/22/dick-and-rick-hoyt-run-marathon-their-last-duo/0802xd1CGKe5Z84VmCgMpI/story.html>>

79. **McCloskey, Keith:** Mountain of the Dead: The Dyatlov Pass Incident. The History Press, July 1 2013 <URL: \[http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0752494074

80. **McClure, Rusty and Heffron, Jack:** Coral Castle: The story of Ed Leedskalnin and his American Stonehenge. Ternary Publishing LLC, 2009 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN098421321X>>, 250, ISBN 9780984213214

81. **McDonald, Danny:** We spoke to Dick Hoyt about why he stopped running the Boston Marathon. Metro, April 20 2015 <URL: <http://www.metro.us/boston/we-spoke-to-dick-hoyt-about-why-he-stopped-running-the-boston-marathon/zsJods---jaWX1C6eyCpbk/>>

82. **McFadden, Robert D.:** Hiroo Onoda, Japanese officer whose war lasted decades, dies. The Seattle Times, January 17 9:30pm 2014a <URL: \\[http://seattletimes.com/html/nationworld/2022697488_onodaobitxml.html\\]\\(http://seattletimes.com/html/nationworld/2022697488_onodaobitxml.html\\)>

83. **McFadden, Robert D.:** Hiroo Onoda, Soldier Who Hid in Jungle for Decades, Dies at 91. New York Times, January 17 2014b <URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2014/01/18/world/asia/hiroo-onoda-imperial-japanese-army-officer-dies-at-91.html>>

84. **McGinn, Thomas A. J.:** The Economy of Prostitution in the Roman World: A Study of Social History & the Brothel. University of Michigan Press, 2004 <URL: \\[http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0472113623

85. **Medley, Laea:** Nothing was left unsaid: son. DailyNews, March 05, 10:16am 2012 <URL: <http://www.iol.co.za/dailynews/news/nothing-was-left-unsaid-son-1.1248653>>\\]\\(http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0472113623\\)\]\(http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0752494074\)](http://www.amazon.com/dp/0684193205)

86. **Mendez, Antonio J.:** CIA Goes Hollywood: A Classic Case of Deception. Center for the Study of Intelligence, 43 2000, Nr. 3 <URL: <https://www.cia.gov/library/center-for-the-study-of-intelligence/kent-csi/vol43no3/pdf/v43i3a01p.pdf>>
87. **Mendez, Antonio J.:** A Classic Case of Deception: CIA Goes Hollywood. Central Intelligence Agency, June 27 7:32am 2007 <URL: <http://www.webcitation.org/6EfV06ggM>>, cahced 2013 February 24 11:50:24
88. **Mendez, Antonio J.:** The Master of Disguise: My Secret Life in the CIA. HarperCollins, October 13 2009 <URL: <http://books.google.com.tw/books?vid=ISBN9780061865305>>, 376, ISBN 978-0-06-186530-5
89. **Montminy, Patricia W.:** Waters once served time, judge told. Sun, 1982 <URL: <http://www.innocenceproject.org/docs/conviction/Newspaper.pdf>>
90. **Morales, Natalie:** A Father's Love for his Son. December 26 2006 <URL: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=f1Rvs08m_KI>
91. **Naireland, Joe:** Eric Liddell. Day of Discovery, 2014 April 13 <URL: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=zVKvCCZre1E>>
92. **Nall, Sam:** It's Only a Mountain: Dick and Rick Hoyt, Men of Iron. 2nd edition. St. Petersburg: Southern Heritage Press, January 31 2002 <URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/0941072517>>, 331, ISBN 0941072517
93. Area Beta Sigma Phi Chapters To Aid Hope Machine Research. Nashua Telegraph, January 23 1974 <URL: http://news.google.com/newspapers?nid=2209&dat=19740123&id=B58rAAAAIBAJ&sjid=T_wFAAAIBAJ&pg=6099,2958347>
94. **Online, Warner Brothers:** ARGO: Declassified. February 19 2013 <URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=tg3MJsvHgEg>>
95. **Onoda, Hiroo:** No Surrender: my thirty-year war. trans. by Charles S. Terry. Annapolis, Maryland: Naval Institute Press, 1974, Bluejacket Books <URL: <http://www.amazon.com/dp/1612515649>>, 219, ISBN 978-1-55750-663-4
96. **Osadchuk, Svetlana:** Mysterious Deaths of 9 Skiers Still Unresolved. The St. Petersburg Times, Feburary 19 2008, Nr. 1349 <URL: <http://www.sptimes.ru/story/25093>>, accessed 2014 December 07 Sunday
97. **Paine, Lincoln P.:** Warships of the World to 1900. Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2000, Ships of the World Series <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN9780395984149>>, 266, ISBN 9780395984147
98. **Pliny:** Ashen Sky: The Letters of Pliny the Younger on the Eruption of Vesuvius. trans. by Benedicte Gilman. Getty Publications, 2007 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0892369000>>, 39, ISBN 9780892369003
99. **Pogrebin, Robin:** From Waitress to Brother's Savior, Then Hollywood Hero. New York Times, October 13 2010 <URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/10/13/movies/13waitress.html>>
100. **Prasad, Tarni:** A Course in Linguistics. New Delhi: Prentice-Hall of India Private Limited, 2008 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN8120334299>>, ISBN 9788120334298
101. **Project, Innocence:** The True Story Behind "Conviction". November 16 2010, video <URL: http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=fCZ03_sW7VQ>
102. **Reilly, Rick:** Strongest Dad In The World. Sports Illustrated, June 20 2005 <URL: <http://vault.sportsillustrated.cnn.com/vault/article/magazine/MAG1111767/>>
103. **Rodriguez, Ihosvani:** Hallandale Beach honors fired lifeguard with key to the city. Sun Sentinel, July 9 2012 <URL: http://articles.sun-sentinel.com/2012-07-09/news/fl-tomas-lopez-hallandale-beach-city-key-20120709_1_jeff-ellis-management-tomas-lopez-lifeguard>
104. **Rosbe, Judith Westlund:** Maritime Marion, Massachusetts. Arcadia Publishing, 2002 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0738523666>>, 160, ISBN 0738523666
105. **Rozier, Angela:** Lifeguard honored after saving drowning man. July 9 2012a <URL: https://youtu.be/Pu4D_02tSgU>
106. **Rozier, Angela:** Lifeguard meets teen he saved before being fired. July 9 2012b <URL: <https://youtu.be/uYw0QZ9x84M>>
107. **Ruffins, Ebonne:** Recycling hotel soap to save lives. CNN, June 16 20:54gmt 2011 <URL: <http://edition.cnn.com/2011/US/06/16/cnnheroes.kayongo.hotel.soap/index.html>>

108. **Saint, Steve:** End of the Spear. Tyndale House Publishers, December 5 2005 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0842364390>>, 338, ISBN 0842364390
109. **Seattle, Sabrina in:** Sabrina in Seattle: Episode 14 with Phoenix Jones & the Rain City Superhero Movement. May 4 2015, interview <URL: <https://soundcloud.com/criticalsun/sabrina-in-seattle-episode-14-with-phoenix-jones-the-rain-city-superhero-movement>>
110. **Shibles, Warren A.:** Chinese Romanization Systems: IPA Transliteration. Sino-Platonic Papers, November 1994, Nr. 52 <URL: http://www.sino-platonic.org/complete/spp052_chinese_ipa.pdf>
111. **Sloane, Paul:** Lateral Thinking Puzzlers. Sterling Publishing Company, Inc., 1992 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0806982276>>, 1996, ISBN 0806982276
112. **Smietana, Bob:** At 22, Tennessee woman is mom to 13 Ugandan children. The (Nashville) Tennessean, October 11, 10:56am 2011 <URL: <http://usatoday30.usatoday.com/news/religion/story/2011-10-10/katie-davis-uganda/50723100/1>>
113. **Smith, William and Anthon, Charles:** A New Classical Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography, Mythology and Geography: Partly Based Upon the Dictionary of Greek and Roman Biography and Mythology. New York: Harper & Brothers, 1862 <URL: <https://archive.org/details/newclassicaldict00anthiala>>, 1039
114. **Staff, NPR:** 'Skyjack': The Unsolved Case Of D.B. Cooper's Escape. National Public Radio, September 25 2011 <URL: <http://www.npr.org/2011/09/25/140216653/>>
115. **Stockman, Farah, Daniel, Mac and Staff, Globe:** After 18 years in prison, 'It's great to be free'. Boston Globe, March 16 2001 <URL: <http://truthinjustice.org/ken-waters.htm>>
116. **Teproff, Carli and Illades, Esteban:** Hallandale Beach rescuers meet the man whose life they saved. Miami Herald, July 9 5:00am 2012 <URL: <http://www.miamiherald.com/latest-news/article1941112.html>>
117. **Thomas, Pierre:** D.B. Cooper Exclusive: Did Niece Provide Key Evidence? ABC Nightline, August 3 2011 <URL: <http://abcnews.go.com/US/db-cooper-exclusive-niece-provide-key-evidence/story?id=14219052>>
118. **Waters, Betty Anne:** November 20 1998, letter to *The Innocence Project* <URL: http://www.innocenceproject.org/docs/conviction/Betty_Anne_Waters_ltr_to_IP.pdf>
119. Brother's overturned conviction now movie., video <URL: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=SpQi5ozWprM>>
120. **Weissbach, Muriel Mirak:** How Champollion Deciphered the Rosetta Stone. Fall 1999 <URL: http://www.schillerinstitute.org/fid_97-01/993_champollion.html>
121. **Wilford, John Noble:** Hunting One Language, Stumbling Upon Another. The New York Times, October 11 2010 <URL: <http://www.nytimes.com/2010/10/12/science/12language.html>>, accessed 2010 March 16 EST
122. **Wilkins, Harold T.:** The Secrets of Davy Jone's Cupboard. Popular Mechanics, 54 October 1930, Nr. 4, 546–449 <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?id=j0IDAAAAMBAJ>>, ISSN 0032–4558
123. **Wilkinson, Paul:** Pompeii: The Last Day. BBC, 2003a, Documentary television programs, video
124. **Wilkinson, Paul:** Pompeii: The Last Day. BBC Books, 2003b, Documentary television programs <URL: <http://books.google.com/books?vid=ISBN0563487704>>, 192, ISBN 9780563487708
125. **Willacy, Mark and Onoda, Hiroo:** Japanese holdouts fought for decades after WWII. Australian Broadcasting Corporation, December 11 2010 <URL: <http://www.abc.net.au/lateline/content/2010/s3065416.htm>>, broadcast 2010 December 11
126. **Zarrella, John and Mungin, Lateef:** Florida lifeguard says he's been offered his job back. CNN, July 6, 13:44 GMT 2012 <URL: <http://edition.cnn.com/2012/07/05/us/florida-lifeguard-fired/>>
127. **葉德明, editor:** Far East Pinyin Chinese-English Dictionary: 遠東拼音漢英辭典. Taipei: 遠東圖書公司 (yuǎn dōng tú shū gōng sī) The Far East Book Company, Limited, 2000 <URL: <http://www.worldcat.org/isbn/957612462X>>, 878, editor 葉德明=Yè Dé Miíng (leaf virtue bright), ISBN 978–9576124624

ENGLISH WORD INDEX

The Road Not Taken(未走之路), 27
son and daughter, 137

4, 21
5, 75
6, 13
7, 21, 75

a(一个), 137
abandon(v) 抛弃, 49
abandon(v) 离弃, 97
absurd(可笑的), 83
abuse(v) 虐待, 49
actor(n) 男演员, 91
actress(n) 女演员, 91
admit(v) 承认, 9
advertisement(n) 广告, 91
affection(n) 感情, 111
afraid(adj) 害怕的, 36
Africa(n) 非洲, 57
aircraft(n) 航空器, 121
airforce(n) 空军, 115
airplane(n) 飞机, 71, 121
alcohol(酒精), 98
algebra(n) 代数学, 28
alive(adj) 活着的, 37
Allies(n) 盟国, 115
alligator(n) 鳄鱼, 135
alphabet(n) 字母, 127
amateur(adj) 业余的, 77
ancestor 宗/宗 (Zōng), 156
angry(adj) 生气的, 36
annoy(v) 惹恼, 71
Argentina(n) 阿根廷, 72
armor(n) 盔甲, 115
army(n) 陆军, 115
arrest(v) 逮捕, 9, 77
art(n) 艺术, 28
artist(n) 艺术家, 91
artwork(n) 艺术品, 91
assist(v) 帮助, 103
assistance(n) 帮助, 103
astronaut(n) 太空人, 121
athlete(n) 运动员, 29
attack(v) 攻击, 37
attacked(攻击), 100
attorney(n) 律师, 9
avalanche(n) 雪崩, 15

balloon(n) 气球, 121
bank account(n) 银行的帐户, 65
banknote(n) 钞票, 65

barrel(n) 大桶, 97
battle(n) 交战, 115
beach(n) 海滩, 43
BEEP Pronouncing Dictionary(BEEP发音字典), 129
beer(啤酒), 130
beggar(n) 乞丐, 111
beloved(adj) 心爱的, 85
better(更好), 83
big(adj) 大的, 36
biology(n) 生物学, 28
bird(n) 鸟, 83
blind(adj) 盲目的, 85
blood sample(n) 血液样本, 9
board(v) 上船, 97
boat(n) 小船, 97
boil(v) 沸腾, 15
Bolivia(n) 玻利维亚, 72
book report(n) 读书报告, 23
book 書(shù), 155
book 書(shù), 155
book 書/书(shù), 155
book 書/书(shù), 155
bored(adj) 无聊的, 36
bounce(v) 拍, 36
boyfriend(n) 男朋友, 85
brain(n) 头脑, 3
brave(adj) 勇敢的, 13
Brazil(n) 巴西, 72
break into(v) 闯入, 77
breathe(v) 呼吸, 43
broken down car(破车), 65
brush my teeth(v) 刷牙, 36
bullet proof(adj) 防弹的, 77
bullet(n) 子弹, 115
burn(v) 烧, 15
bury(v) 埋藏, 15
bush(n) 灌木丛, 57
business card(n) 名片, 91

cabin(n) 客舱, 97
calendar(月历), 131
calm(adj) 镇静的, 13
camp(n) 营地, 107
camp(v) 露营, 37
campsite(n) 露营地, 37
captain(n) 船长, 97
capture(v) 捕获, 57
captured(捕获), 18
carefree(adj) 无忧无虑的, 13
carvings(雕刻物), 73
castle(城堡), 86
catch fire(着火), 100

catch(v) 接, 36
century(世纪), 131
character(n) 字位, 127
charcoal(n) 木炭, 15
Chariots of Fire(n) 火战车, 32
check mark(n) 勾, 23
check(n) 支票, 65
cheer(v) 欢呼, 29
Chile(n) 智利, 72
Chinese(n) 中文, 28
choke(v) 窒息, 43
Christmas(n) 圣诞节, 34, 35
class president(n) 班代表, 49
class(n) 阶级, 97, 111
classmate(n) 同学, 23
clean(adj) 干淨的, 107
clean(v) 打扫, 107
clever(adj) 聪明的, 13
cloud(n) 云, 83
Coast Guard(n) 海岸警卫队, 43
coast(n) 海岸, 43
collapse(v) 倒塌, 15, 49
collapse(v) 晕倒, 29
college(n) 大学, 49
college(大学), 67
collide(v) 碰撞, 97
Columbia(n) 哥伦比亚, 72
combat(n) 战斗, 77
combines(结合), 130
commander(n) 指挥官, 115
committed(adj) 忠诚的, 9
compass(n) 指南针, 97
compete(v) 比赛, 3
computer class(n) 电脑课, 28
computer program(电脑程式), 129
con artist(n) 诈骗高手, 65
con(n) 欺诈, 65
con(v) 欺诈, 65
conman(n) 骗子, 65
consonant(n) 子音, 127
convertible(n) 敞篷车, 49
convict(v) 证明有罪, 9
cook(v) 烹调, 36
copilot(n) 副驾驶员, 121
coral(珊瑚), 87
counterfeit(adj) 伪造的, 65
counterfeit(v) 伪造, 65
counterfeiter(n) 伪造者, 65
couple(n) 夫妻, 85
course(n) 路线, 97
court(n) 法庭, 9
cow, 136
crazy(发疯), 83

credit card(n) 信用卡, 65
 crew member(n) 船员, 97
 crew(n) 船员们, 97
 Crops(庄稼), 15
 cry(v) 哭, 36, 83
 curious(adj) 好奇的, 13
 current(n) 水流, 43
 damage(v) 损坏, 3
 dance(v) 跳舞, 36
 date(v/n) 约会, 85
 dead(adj) 死的, 37
 debris(n) 破瓦残砾, 15
 decipher(解码), 131
 deck(n) 甲板, 97
 dedicate(v) 献身, 9
 defend(v) 捍卫, 77
 degree(n) 学位, 9
 demonstrator(n) 示威者, 91
 Department(系), 129
 dependable(adj) 可靠的, 13
 depressed(adj) 沮丧的, 36
 depressed(沮丧), 24
 desert(v) 遗弃, 9
 destroyer(n) 驱逐舰, 97
 diarrhea(n) 腹泻, 107
 die(v) 死, 37
 dignity(n) 尊严, 111
 diligent(adj) 勤劳的, 13
 diphthongs(双元音), 128
 director(n) 董事, 49
 dirty(adj) 肮脏的, 49
 dirty(adj) 脏的, 107
 discovery(发现), 131
 disease(n) 疾病, 49, 107
 disguise(n) 伪装, 91
 dispose of(v) 处理掉, 107
 divorced(离婚), 24
 do my homework(v) 写功课, 36
 door(n) 门, 121
 dribble(v) 拍, 36
 drink(v) 喝, 36
 drive(v) 开, 36
 drop out(v) 退学, 9, 23
 dropout(退学生), 67
 drown(v) 淹死, 43
 drunk(喝醉的), 100
 dry 乾/干 (gān), 157
 duathlon(n) 三项铁人, 3
 dust(n) 灰尘, 15
 Earth Day(n) 世界地球日, 34
 earthquake(n) 地震, 15
 Easter(n) 复活节, 34
 easy(简单), 83
 eat(v) 吃, 36
 Ecuador(n) 厄瓜多尔, 72
 education(n) 教育, 23
 Egypt(埃及), 131
 elderly(adj) 年纪的人, 111
 electric fence(n) 电围栏, 57
 electric(adj) 电的, 57
 elephant(n) 大象, 57
 elite(adj) 精英的, 111
 embarrassed(adj) 尴尬的, 36
 embassy(n) 大使馆, 91
 engaged(adj) 订婚的, 85
 English(n) 英文, 28
 erupt(v) 迸出, 15
 escape(v) 逃走, 57
 escape(逃走), 18
 exhausted(adj) 精疲力竭, 29
 exonerate(v) 使免受指控, 9
 expectations(期望), 27
 explode(v) 爆炸, 15
 exploded(爆炸), 100
 facemask(n) 潜水面镜, 43

fake(adj) 假的, 65, 91
 farmer(n) 农夫, 135
 fast(adj) 快的, 29
 fastest(adj) 最快的, 29
 fat(adj) 胖的, 36
 Father's Day(n) 父亲节, 34, 35
 feel(v) 感觉, 85
 feeling(n) 感觉, 85
 feet(n) 英尺, 121
 female(女), 15
 fence(n) 篱笆, 57
 fiance(n) 未婚夫, 85
 fiancee(n) 未婚妻, 85
 fight(v) 打仗, 115
 fight(v) 打架, 77
 figure out(想出), 131
 fingerprint(n) 指纹, 9
 finish(n) 终点, 29
 fire(n) 火, 37
 fisherman, 137
 flight attendant(n) 空服员, 121
 flight engineer(n) 航空工程师, 121
 float(v) 浮, 121
 flood(n) 洪水, 15
 Florida(佛罗里达州), 86
 fly(v) 飞, 83, 121
 Font designer's name?, 156
 forest(n) 森林, 37, 57
 forge(v) 伪造, 65
 forgery(n) 伪造物, 65
 forget(v) 忘记, 71
 forgive(v) 原谅, 71
 forgiveness(n) 宽恕, 71
 forgiving(adj) 宽容的, 13
 formal(adj) 正式的, 23
 fraud(n) 诈骗罪, 65
 freeze to death(v) 冻死, 37
 freeze(v) 冰冻, 37
 French Guiana(n) 法属圭亚那, 72
 French(n) 法语, 28
 Friday(n) 星期五, 33
 friendless(adj) 没有朋友的, 111
 friendly(adj) 友善的, 13
 Frost(佛洛斯特), 27
 fuel(n) 燃料, 121
 gas(n) 气, 15
 gave birth(生孩子), 24
 generous(adj) 慷慨的, 13
 gentle(adj) 温和的, 13
 geography(n) 地理学, 28
 gift(n) 礼品, 71
 girlfriend(n) 女朋友, 85
 gladiators(角斗士), 15
 glyph(n) 字形, 127
 goggles(n) 蛙镜, 43
 gold medal(n) 金牌, 29
 graduate(v) 毕业, 23
 grapheme(n) 字位, 127
 Greek(希腊文), 131
 Greek(希腊语), 130
 guard(v) 守卫, 43
 guards(警卫), 18
 guerrilla warfare(n) 避击战, 115
 guilty(adj) 有罪的, 9
 gun(n) 枪, 115
 Guyana(n) 盖亚那, 72
 Halloween(n) 万圣节, 34, 35
 handicapped(adj) 残障的, 3
 hang-glider(n) 滑翔翼, 121
 happy(adj) 快乐的, 36
 hard-working(adj) 努力工作的, 13
 head(v) 用头顶, 36
 hear(v) 听见, 36
 heavy(adj) 重的, 36
 Hebrew(希伯来语), 130

helicopter(n) 直升机, 121
 help(v/n) 帮助, 103
 helpful(adj) 有帮助的, 13
 helpless(adj) 无助的, 111
 herd(n) 象群, 57
 hero(n) 英雄, 29, 77
 hero(英雄), 132
 heroine(n) 女英雄, 77
 hide(v) 藏起来, 115
 hide(v) 躲藏, 15
 hide(vi) 躲藏, 103
 hide(vt) 藏起来, 103
 hieroglyphics(象形文字), 131
 high school(n) 高级中学, 23
 highlight(n) 亮点, 23
 hike(n) 健行, 37
 hiker(n) 健行者, 37
 Hints(n) 提示, 7, 14, 19, 42, 46
 Hints(提示), 55, 83
 Hints(暗示), 21, 28, 111, 119, 124, 130
 history(n) 历史, 28
 history(历史), 131
 hit(v) 打, 36
 hold(v) 抱, 36
 holding pen(n) 栏, 57
 Hollywood(n) 好莱坞, 91
 home(n) 家, 83
 homeless(adj) 无家的, 111
 homework(n) 功课, 23
 honest(adj) 诚实的, 13
 honor(v) 尊荣, 29
 honors(n) 荣誉, 23
 hospital(n) 医院, 49
 How many(多少), 137
 human urine(人尿), 15
 human(n/adj) 人类, 37
 human(人类的), 71
 humble(adj) 谦逊的, 29
 humorous(adj) 幽默的, 13
 hunt(v) 追猎, 57
 hunter(n) 猎人, 57
 hunting grounds(n) 狩猎场, 57
 hurricane(n) 飓风, 15
 hygiene(n) 卫生, 107
 hypothermia(n) 低体温症, 37
 I.D.(n) 身分证, 65
 iceberg(冰山), 100
 identification(n) 身分证, 65
 ideograph(n) 形意文字, 127
 ignore(v) 不理, 71
 illegal(adj) 非法的, 77
 In Darkness(黑暗弥漫), 103
 Independence Day(n)
 美国独立纪念日, 34, 35
 infect(v) 传染, 107
 injured(adj) 受伤的, 49
 innocent(adj) 无罪的, 9
 inside(里面), 83
 institution(n) 机构, 3
 insurance(保险), 100
 intelligence(n) 情报, 115
 intelligent(adj) 有才智的, 13
 intelligent(adj) 有智能的, 3
 invade(v) 入侵, 115
 invasion(n) 入侵, 115
 investigate(v) 调查, 37
 investigator(n) 调查者, 37
 ironman(n) 铁人比赛, 3
 irrigation(灌溉), 131
 jet(n) 喷射机, 121
 jubilation(欢腾), 130
 jungle(n) 丛林, 57, 71, 115
 jungle(丛林), 72
 junior high school(n) 初级中学, 23

kick(v) 踢, 36	moon(n) 月亮, 34	promise(v) 答应, 9
kill(v) 杀, 71	Mother's Day(n) 母亲节, 34	protect(v) 保护, 43
kill(v) 杀死, 115	movie(n) 电影, 91	proud(adj) 骄傲的, 29
kilometer(n) 公里, 3	murder(v) 谋杀, 9	Prussia(普鲁士), 134
kind(adj) 亲切的, 13	music(n) 音乐, 28	punished(处罚), 18
kindergarten(n) 幼稚园, 23, 49	mutiny(叛变), 100	purpose(n) 目的, 111
King 王/Wáng, 156	mutual(adj) 相互的, 77	pyroclastic surge(n) 火山碎屑潮, 15
kite(n) 风筝, 121		quiet(adj) 安静的, 13
knees(膝盖), 83		race(n/v) 赛跑, 3
knowledge(n) 知识, 23		raft(n) 木筏, 97
lab(n) 实验室, 107		ranger(n) 护林员, 57
land(n) 土地, 57		reach out(v) 帮助, 111
land(v) 降落, 121		react(反应), 68
landscape(n) 风景, 37		read(v) 读, 36
landslide(n) 山崩, 15		recognize(v) 认出, 23
language(n) 语言, 127		record(n) 纪录, 29
Latvia(拉脱维亚), 86		record(n) 记录, 77
laugh(v) 笑, 36		recycle(v) 回收, 107
law school(n) 法学院, 9		reeds(芦苇), 131
lawyer(n) 律师, 9		refugee camp(n) 难民营, 107
learn(v) 学习, 23		refugee(n) 难民, 107
legal(adj) 合法的, 77		rejoicing(欣喜), 130
library(n) 图书馆, 23		relative(n) 亲戚, 49
license(n) 驾照, 65		relief(n) 救济物品, 103
lie detector test(n) 测谎, 9		relieve(v) 缓和, 103
lie(撒谎), 83		rescue(n/v) 营救, 37
life in prison(n) 终身监禁, 9		rescue(v) 救, 43
life(n) 生活, 43		retaliate(v) 报仇, 71
lifeguard(n) 救生员, 43		retaliation(n) 报复, 71
light(adj) 轻的, 36		revenge(n) 报仇, 71
lighthouse(n) 灯塔, 97		rich(adj) 丰富的, 49
like(v) 喜欢, 85		ride(v) 骑, 3, 83
Linguistics(语言学), 129		riverbank(n) 河岸, 97
lion, 136		rocket(n) 火箭, 121
liquid(液体), 130		roll(v) 滚动, 36
lodge(n) 旅馆, 57		rowboat(n) 划艇, 97
long(adj) 长的, 36		rubber bands(橡皮筋), 73
lose(v) 输, 3		rule(n) 规则, 23
love(n) 爱情, 34, 85		run(v) 跑, 3, 36
love(v) 爱, 85		
lower class(adj) 下层阶级的, 111		sad(adj) 难过的, 36
loyal(adj) 忠诚的, 13		sail(n) 帆, 97
lust(n) 性慾, 85		sail(v) 驾船, 97
Míng Dynasty 明/明 (Míng), 156		sanitize(v) 消毒, 107
machete(n) 开山刀, 71		satellite(n) 人造卫星, 121
makeup artist(n) 化妆师, 91		Saturday(n) 星期六, 33
makeup(n) 化妆, 91		Saturn(n) 土星, 34
marathon(n) 马拉松, 3		save(v) 救, 43, 111
mark(v) 批改, 23		scam(n) 骗局, 65
mark(批改), 24		school(n) 学校, 23
marriage(n) 婚姻, 85		science(n) 科学, 28
married(adj) 已婚的, 85		Scotland(苏格兰), 29
married(adj) 结婚了, 49		scrape(v) 刮, 107
marry(v) 结婚, 85		script(n) 剧本, 91
Mars(n) 火星, 34		script(n) 字母, 127
martial arts(n) 武术, 77		scrub(v) 用力擦洗, 107
masters(主人), 15		seaman(n) 海员, 97
material(教材), 27		search and rescue(n) 搜救, 37
math(n) 数学, 28		search party(n) 搜索队, 115
matriarch(n) 女家长, 57		search(n/v) 搜索, 37
medium 中/中 (zhōng), 156		seat(n) 座位, 121
mental hospital(精神病院), 24		see(v) 看见, 36
mental(adj) 精神的, 111		sentence(v) 宣判, 9
mentally ill(adj) 精神病的, 111		series(n) 电视剧, 91
Mercury(n) 水星, 34		serious(adj) 严肃的, 13
meter(n) 公尺, 29, 121		serve(v) 服务, 103
metropolitan area(n) 都市区, 77		serve(v) 发, 36
mile(n) 英里, 3		service(n) 服务, 103
military(n/adj) 军用的, 37		sewer(n) 下水道, 103
missile(n) 飞弹, 121		shampoo(n) 洗发水, 107
missionary(n) 传教士, 71		shatter(v) 粉碎, 15
mix(v) 混和, 107		ship(n) 船, 97
mixed martial arts(n) 混合武术, 77		shocked(adj) 震惊的, 111
Monday(n) 星期一, 33		shoot(v) 射中, 115
monophthongs(单元音), 128		shoot(v) 拍摄, 57

short(adj) 短的, 36
 short(adj) 矮的, 36
 shot(v) 射击, 77
 shot(射中), 18
 shy(adj) 害羞的, 13
 sick(adj) 有病的, 111
 signal(v) 示意, 97
 signature(n) 签名, 65
 sing(v) 唱歌, 36
 ski mask(n) 滑雪面具, 77
 ski(v) 滑雪, 37
 skill(n) 技术, 77
 slaves(奴隶), 15
 sleep(v) 睡觉, 36, 83
 sleeping bag(n) 睡袋, 37
 small(adj) 小的, 36
 smell(v) 闻, 36
 snorkel(n) 浮潜, 43
 soap(n) 肥皂, 107
 social worker(n) 社工, 49
 sociology(社会学), 67
 soldier(n) 士兵, 115
 sound(n) 声音, 127
 spaceship(n) 太空船, 121
 spear(n) 矛, 71
 spin(v) 旋转, 36
 spread out(v) 摊开, 15
 sprint(v) 全速疾跑, 29
 stab proof(adj) 防刺的, 77
 stab(v) 刺, 77
 stairs(n) 楼梯, 121
 stand by(v) 支持, 9
 start(n) 起点, 29
 starting gun(n) 发令枪, 29
 steal(v) 抢, 36
 stewardess(n) 女服务员, 121
 studious(adj) 好学的, 13
 study(v) 学习, 23
 style 髮型 (tǐ), 156
 suffocate(v) 窒息, 15
 suit(n) 制服, 77
 sun(n) 太阳, 34
 Sunday(n) 星期天, 33
 superhero(n) 超级英雄, 77
 support(n/v) 扶养, 103
 support(v) 支撑, 103
 surgeons(外科医生), 25
 Suriname(n) 苏利南, 72
 surprised(adj) 惊讶的, 36
 surrender(v) 投降, 115
 survive(v) 活下来, 115

survive(v) 生存, 43
 suspect(v) 怀疑, 65
 sustain(v) 维持, 103
 sustenance(n) 食物, 103
 swim(v) 游泳, 3, 36, 43
 swimmer(n) 游泳者, 43
 swimsuit(n) 泳衣, 43
 sword(n) 剑, 97
 syllable(n) 音节, 127
 take off(v) 起飞, 121
 tall(adj) 高的, 36
 taste(v) 味, 36
 teacher(n) 老师, 23
 telescope(n) 望远镜, 97
 Tennessee(n) 田纳西州, 49
 tent(n) 帐篷, 37
 Thanksgiving(n) 感恩节, 34, 35
 the Han people 漢/汉 (Hàn), 156
 theories(理论), 100
 thin(adj) 瘦的, 36
 thoughtful(adj) 体贴的, 13
 throw away(v) 丢掉, 107
 throw(v) 丢, 36
 thunder(n) 雷声, 34
 thunderstorm(n) 大雷雨, 15
 Thursday(n) 星期四, 33
 ticket(n) 票, 121
 tidal wave(n) 海啸, 43
 to offend 干/干 (gān), 157
 to see 見/见 (jiàn), 157
 tonal(adj) 有声的, 127
 tone(n) 声, 127
 tons(吨), 87
 tornado(n) 龙捲风, 15
 touch(v) 摸, 36
 track(n) 跑道, 29
 traffic camera(n) 交通摄像头, 77
 train(n) 火车, 83
 train(v) 训练, 3
 traitor(n) 叛国者, 29
 transgression(n) 犯罪, 71
 tree trunk 幹/干 (gàn), 157
 triathlon(n) 三项运动, 3
 tribe(部落), 72
 trick(n) 诡计, 115
 trick(v) 哄骗, 115
 trigonometry(n) 三角函数, 28
 trunk(n) 大象的鼻子, 57
 trust(v) 相信, 57
 tsunami(n) 海啸, 15
 Tuesday(n) 星期二, 33

twins(双胞胎), 25
 typhoon(n) 台风, 15
 Uganda(n) 乌干达, 49
 ultramarathon(n) 超级马拉松, 3
 understand(了解), 27
 uniform(n) 制服, 65
 university(n) 大学, 23
 unrequited(adj) 无报答的, 85
 upper class(adj) 上层阶级的, 111
 Uruguay(n) 乌拉圭, 72
 Valentine's Day(n) 情人节, 34
 vaporize(v) 蒸发, 15
 vegetable(n) 植物人, 3
 Venezuela(n) 委内瑞拉, 72
 vet(n) 兽医, 135
 video(n) 影片, 77
 violent(adj) 凶暴的, 71
 voiced(adj) 浊音的, 127
 voiceless(adj) 清音的, 127
 volcano(n) 火山, 15
 volt(adj) 伏特的, 57
 volunteer(n) 义工, 49
 vowel(n) 母音, 127
 war(n) 战争, 115
 warrior(n) 武士, 115
 wash(v) 洗, 107
 waste(v) 浪费, 23
 weather service(n) 气象局, 37
 weather(n) 天气, 37
 wedding(n) 婚礼, 85
 Wednesday(n) 星期三, 33
 wheelchair(n) 轮椅, 3
 wild fire(n) 野火, 15
 wildlife preserve(n)
 野生动物保护区, 57
 wildlife(n) 野生生物, 57
 win(v) 赢得, 3, 29
 wisdom(n) 智慧, 23
 wise(adj) 有智慧的, 13
 World War II(n) 第二次世界大战, 115
 worried(adj) 担心的, 36
 wound(v) 伤害, 115
 yard(n) 码, 29
 ZhuYin 注音/注音 (zhù yīn), 156
 zookeeper(n) 动物园管理员, 135



...last page ...please stop reading ...

